THE BMW 5 SERIES
GRAN TURISMO.
OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.
Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the printed or integrated Owner's Manual are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable drive.

BMW AG
Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 238.

6 Notes

At a glance
12 Cockpit
16 iDrive
22 Voice activation system
25 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Controls
30 Opening and closing
49 Adjusting
63 Transporting children safely
67 Driving
80 Displays
96 Lamps
101 Safety
121 Driving stability control systems
129 Driving comfort
151 Climate control
158 Interior equipment
166 Storage compartments

Driving tips
172 Things to remember when driving
175 Loading
178 Saving fuel

Mobility
184 Refueling
186 Fuel
187 Wheels and tires
197 Engine compartment
199 Engine oil
202 Coolant
203 Maintenance
206 Replacing components
212 Breakdown assistance
217 Care

Reference
224 Technical data
229 Short commands of the voice act. system
238 Everything from A to Z
Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.
An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment and Communication are described in a separate user's manual, which is also included with the on-board literature.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any questions, your service center will be glad to advise you at any time.
Information on BMW, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: bmwusa.com.

Symbols

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, equipment is also described and illustrated that is not available in your vehicle, e.g. because of the selected optional equipment or the country-specific variants.
This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.
For options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.
On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently than shown in the illustrations.

Status of the Owner's Manual

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.
For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair methods.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and Accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW. When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.

BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship. BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW. BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants. Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers. Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle’s electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating con-
ditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance
Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:
▷ BMW Maintenance system
▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers
The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers
Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.
At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.
Cockpit

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

All around the steering wheel

1. Seating comfort functions

   - Seat, mirror, steering wheel memory 59
   - Active seat 52

2. Roller sunblinds 46

3. Safety switch for the rear windows and roller sunblinds 45

4. Power windows 44

5. Exterior mirror operation 60

6. Driver assistance systems

   - Active Blind Spot Detection 117
   - Collision warning 111, 109
   - Lane departure warning 116
   - Night Vision with pedestrian detection 113
   - Head-up Display 149

7. Lamps
Front fog lamps 99
Parking lamps 96
Low beams 96
Automatic headlamp control 97
Daytime running lights 97
Adaptive light control 98
High-beam Assistant 98
Instrument lighting 99

8 Steering column stalk, left
   Turn signal 74
   High beams, headlamp flasher 74
   High-beam Assistant 98
   Roadside parking lamps 97
   Computer 91

9 Steering wheel buttons, left
   Store speed 136 130
   Resume speed 137 131
   Cruise control on/off, interrupt 135 130
   Increase distance 131
   Decrease distance 131
   Cruise control rocker switch 136 131

10 Instrument cluster 80
11 Steering wheel buttons, right
   Entertainment source
   Volume
   Voice activation 22
   Phone, see user’s manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.
   Thumbwheel for selection lists 91

12 Steering column stalk, right
   Windshield wipers 75
   Rain sensor 76
   Clean the windshields and headlamps 75
   Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 68
   Auto Start/Stop function 69

13 Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 68
14 Horn
15 Steering wheel heating 62
16 Adjust the steering wheel 62
17 Open the tailgate 39
18 Unlocking the hood
All around the center console

1 Headliner  15
2 Control Display  16
3 Glove compartment  166
4 Air vent  154
5 Hazard warning system  212
   Central locking system  37

7 Automatic climate control  151
8 Controller with buttons  16
9 Parking brake  71
10 PDC Park Distance Control  137
   Top View  139
   Backup camera  141
   Side View  144

11 Dynamic Driving Control  126
   DSC Dynamic Stability Control  126

12 Transmission selector lever

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 902 940 - 07 12 490
All around the headliner

1  Emergency Request    212

2  Panoramic glass sunroof   47

3  Indicator lamp, front passenger airbag   103

4  Reading lamps    100

5  Interior lamps    100
iDrive

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

The iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

Using the iDrive during a trip
To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle’s occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.

Controls at a glance

Controls

1. Control Display
2. Controller with buttons

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and create the settings.

Control Display

Notes

➢ To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
➢ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

Switching off

1. Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"

Switching on

Press the controller again to switch the screen back on.

Controller

Select menu items and create settings.

1. Turn.
2. Press.

3. Move in four directions.

---

### Buttons on controller

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Press the button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Open the main menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIO</td>
<td>Opens the Radio menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDIA</td>
<td>Opens the CD/Multimedia menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAV</td>
<td>Opens the Navigation menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>Opens the Telephone menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK</td>
<td>Displays the previous panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTION</td>
<td>Opens the Options menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Operating concept

#### Opening the main menu

Press the button.

The main menu is displayed. All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

#### Selecting menu items

Menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the controller.

#### Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

#### Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

▷ Move the controller to the left.
The current panel is closed and the previous panel is displayed.

The previous panel is opened again by pressing the BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

▷ Move the controller to the right.
A new panel is opened on top of the previous display.

Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:
▷ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".
   This area remains unchanged.
▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings
1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.

Activating/deactivating the functions
Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.
✓ The function is activated.
☐ The function is deactivated.
Example: setting the clock

Setting the clock

1. Press the button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.
3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status field
The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:
▷ Time.
▷ Current entertainment source.
▷ Sound output, on/off.
▷ Wireless network reception strength.
▷ Telephone status.
▷ Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols
The symbols are grouped as follows.

Radio symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td>HD Radio™ is switched on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satellite radio is switched on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Telephone symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incoming or outgoing call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Missed call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wireless network reception strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Symbol flashes: searching for net-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wireless network is not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bluetooth is switched on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roaming is active.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Switching the split screen on and off

1. Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

## Selecting the display

1. Press the button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.

## Programmable memory buttons

### General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

### Saving a function

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

---

### Symbols and Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>📧</td>
<td>Text message was received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Check the SIM card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📱</td>
<td>SIM card is blocked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📱</td>
<td>SIM card is missing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔒</td>
<td>Enter the PIN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Entertainment symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>CD/DVD player.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎧</td>
<td>Music collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎎</td>
<td>Gracenote® database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎎</td>
<td>AUX-IN port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎎</td>
<td>Rear AUX-IN port on the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎎</td>
<td>Rear AUX-IN port on the right.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🔊</td>
<td>Spoken instructions are switched off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🏙</td>
<td>Request of the current vehicle position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Split screen

#### General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the onboard computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.
Running a function

Press the button. The function will run immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Use a finger to touch the buttons. Do not wear gloves or use objects. The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

- To display short information: touch the button.
- To display detailed information: touch the button for an extended period.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

Entering letters and numbers

General information

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press the controller: delete the letter or number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

The entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters are offered during the entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: town/city names can be entered using the spelling of language available on the Control Display.
Voice activation system

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The concept
▶ Most functions that are displayed on the Control Display can be operated by spoken commands via the voice activation system. The system prompts you to make your entries.
▶ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated using the voice activation system.
▶ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
▶ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements
Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified. Set the language, refer to page 94.

Using voice activation
Activating the voice activation system
1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.
   The command is displayed in the instrument cluster.
   This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active. If no other commands are available, operate the function in this case via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system
Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands
Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The available commands depend on which menu is currently displayed on the Control Display.
Short commands exist for many functions. Some list entries, e.g., Phone book entries, can also be selected via the voice activation system. Speak these list entries exactly as they are displayed in the respective list.

Having possible commands read aloud
You can have the available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹.
For example, if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

Executing functions using short commands
Functions on the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, nearly irrespective of which menu item is currently selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.
List of short commands of the voice activation system, refer to page 229.

Help dialog for the voice activation system
Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹
Additional commands for the help dialog:
▷ ›Help with examples‹: information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them are announced.
▷ ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

Example: playing back a CD

Via the main menu
The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Multimedia‹ The medium last played is played back.
4. ›C D‹ 
5. ›C D drive‹ 
6. ›Track ...‹, e.g., CD track 4.

Via short command
Playback of the CD can also be started via a short command.

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›C D drive track ...‹, e.g., CD track 4.

Setting the voice dialog
You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter version.
In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the announcements from the system are issued in an abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech m.:"
4. Select the setting.

Adjusting the volume
Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.
▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests
Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.
Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 212, in the vicinity of the interior mirror.
Environmental conditions

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- When selecting the radio station, use the standard pronunciation for the station name, ideally as the name appears on the Control Display.
  ›// NOT FOR US‹ e.g. Classic Radio station
- Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle
The integrated Owner’s Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. The equipment and functions that are in the vehicle are described therein.

Components of the integrated Owner's Manual
The integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or access possibilities.

Quick Reference Guide
Located in the Quick Reference is important information for the operation of the vehicle, the operation of basic vehicle functions or for what to do in the event of a flat tire. This information can also be displayed during driving.

Search by pictures
Information and descriptions based on illustrations can be searched via search by pictures. This is helpful, for example, if the description of an outfitting package that cannot be named is needed.

Owner's Manual
Information and descriptions can be searched by direct entry of a search term via the index.

Select components
1. Press the button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle Info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
   ▶ "Quick reference"
   ▶ "Search by pictures"
   ▶ "Owner's Manual"

Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access
Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access
Leaf through the pages directly while skipping the links.
Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to leaf from page to page.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function
The relevant information can be opened directly.
Opening via the iDrive
To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1. Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed
Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:
"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual
To change from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to switch between the two displays:

1. Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
4. Press the button again to return to the function displayed last.
5. Press the button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To switch back and forth repeatedly between the function displayed last and the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last, repeat steps 4 and 5. This opens a new panel every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information
The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing
1. "Owner's Manual" Select via the iDrive.
2. Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Executing
1. Press the button. The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.
Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.
Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Remote control/key

Buttons on the remote control

1. Unlocking
2. Locking
3. Opening the large tailgate
4. Panic mode, headl. courtesy delay feat.

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with keys.

Every remote control contains a replaceable battery.

The settings called up and implemented when the vehicle is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the vehicle, Personal Profile, refer to page 31.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, Service data in the remote control, refer to page 203.

Programming the button assignment for the remote control

The button assignment on the remote control can be set variously depending on how the vehicle is equipped and according to the country-specific variant.

Programming options and the actual button assignment may vary depending on how the vehicle is equipped and according to the country-specific variant.

You can program which functions are enabled when button on the remote control is pressed.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Call the desired button.
4. Call the desired function.

The selected function is stored for the button and the remote control currently in use.

Integrated key

Press the button on the back of the remote control, arrow 1, and pull out the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

▷ Driver’s door.
▷ Storage compartment in the front center armrest.
The storage compartment contains a switch for separately securing the tailgate, refer to page 41.

**Replacing the battery**

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compartment; see arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover closed.

![Battery Replacement](image)

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

**New remote controls**

You can obtain new remote controls from your service center.

**Loss of the remote controls**

Lost remote controls can be blocked by your service center.

**Emergency detection of remote control**

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources.
- Discharged battery in the remote control.
- Interference of radio transmission by mobile devices in close proximity to the remote control.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

**Starting the engine in case of emergency detection of remote control**

If a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

**Personal Profile**

**The concept**

You can set several of your vehicle's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences.

- The settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.
- The remote control used is detected when the vehicle is unlocked and the stored profile is called up.
- Your personal settings will be recognized and called up again even if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by someone else with another remote control.

The individual settings are stored for three Personal Profiles and one guest profile.
Transmitting the settings
Your personal settings can be taken with you to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function. For more information, contact your service center.
Transmission takes place via:
▷ The USB interface in the center armrest onto a USB device.

Profile management

Opening the profiles
A different profile can be called up than the one associated with the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.
The profile that is opened is assigned to the remote control currently in use.

Renaming profiles

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

Resetting profiles
The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. "Profiles"
The current profile is selected.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Reset current profile"

Importing profiles
Existing settings and contacts are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. USB interface, refer to page 162: "USB device"
Exporting profiles
Most settings of the active profile and the saved contacts can be exported.
This can be useful for storing and opening personal settings, e.g. if settings are accidentally changed or deleted.
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. USB interface, refer to page 162: "USB device"

Using the guest profile
The guest profile can be used to make individual settings without affecting the three Personal Profiles.
This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. The current profile is selected.
4. Open "Guest".
5. Adjust the settings.
Note: the guest profile cannot be renamed.

Display profile list during start
The profile list can be displayed during each start for selecting the desired profile.
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

Personal Profile settings
The following functions and settings can be stored in a profile.
More information on the settings can be found under:

- Active Cruise Control: collision warning.
- Collision warning: warning time, last setting on/off.
- Exterior mirror position.
- CD/Multimedia: audio source listened to last.
- Driving Experience Switch: sport program.
- Driver's seat position: automatic retrieval after unlocking.
- Programmable memory buttons: assignment.
- Head-up Display: selection, brightness, position and rotation of the display.
- Headlamp courtesy delay feature: time setting.
- Tone: tone settings.
- Automatic climate control: settings.
- Steering wheel position.
- Navigation: map views, route criteria, voice output on/off.
- Night Vision with pedestrian detection: selection of functions and type of display.
- Park Distance Control PDC: adjusting the signal tone volume.
- Radio: stored stations, station listened to last, special settings.
- Backup camera: selection of functions and type of display.
- Side View: selection of the display type.
- Language on the Control Display.
- Lane departure warning: last setting, on/off.
- Active Blind Spot Detection: last setting, on/off.
- Daytime running lights: current setting.
- Triple turn signal activation.
- Locking the vehicle: after a brief period or after starting to drive.
Central locking system

The concept
The central locking system becomes active when the driver’s door is closed.
The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:
▷ Doors.
▷ Tailgate.
▷ Fuel filler flap.

Operating from the outside
▷ Via the remote control.
▷ Via the driver’s door lock.
▷ Via the door handles.
▷ Via the button on the tailgate.
The following takes place simultaneously when locking/unlocking the vehicle via the remote control:
▷ Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the theft protection is activated/deactivated. Theft protection prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door opener.
▷ The welcome lamps, interior lamps and courtesy lamps are switched on and off.
▷ The alarm system, refer to page 43, is armed or disarmed.

Opening and closing: from the outside

Using the remote control

General information
⚠️ Take the remote control with you
People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.

Unlocking

Press the button on the remote control. The vehicle is unlocked.
Welcome lamps, interior lamp and courtesy lamps are switched on.
You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.
1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. ![Select a symbol.]
4. Select the desired function:
   ▷ "Driver's door only"
   Only the driver’s door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   ▷ "All doors"
   The entire vehicle is unlocked.
Depending on how the vehicle is equipped or the country-specific variant, you can set whether the doors are also unlocked with the button on the remote control.

**Convenient opening**
The remote control can be used to simultaneously open the windows and the glass sunroof.

Press and hold the button on the remote control.

The windows and the glass sunroof open. Releasing the button stops the motion.

**Locking**
Press the button on the remote control.

**Locking from the outside**
Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.

**Switching on interior lamps and courtesy lamps**
Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

**Panic mode**
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

**Switching on the headlamp courtesy delay feature**
Briefly press the button on the remote control.

The key assignment on the remote control can be set variously.

The duration can be set in the Control Display.

**Opening the tailgate**
Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The large tailgate opens slightly. The key assignment on the remote control can be set variously.

Note the opening height of the large tailgate
The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

In some vehicle equipment variants, the tailgate can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first.

To avoid locking yourself out of the vehicle, do not place the remote control into the cargo area. The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is pushed closed.

Provide edge protection
Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.

**Confirmation signals from the vehicle**
1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   ▶ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
   ▶ "Flash when lock/unlock"
Retrieving the seat, mirror, and steering wheel settings

The driver's seat, exterior mirror, and steering wheel positions selected last are stored for the currently used remote control.

When the vehicle is unlocked, these positions are automatically retrieved if this function was activated.

⚠ Pinch hazard when moving back the seat

If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty. Otherwise, people can be injured or objects damaged when the seat is moved back.

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

▷ When a seat position switch is pressed.
▷ When a button of the seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory is pressed briefly.

Activating the setting

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. "Last seat position auto."

Malfunction

If the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked with the remote control, the battery may be discharged or there may be interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

If this occurs, unlock or lock the vehicle at the door lock using the integrated key.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

▷ LX8CAS.
▷ LX8CAS2.
▷ MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
▷ This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Using the door lock

General information

⚠ Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.

⚠ Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key.

In some country-specific versions, the alarm system is triggered if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.
In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control, or switch on the ignition, if necessary, by emergency detection of the remote control.

In some vehicle equipment versions, only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked via the door lock.

**Locking the doors and tailgate at once**

To lock all doors and the tailgate at once:

1. With the doors closed, lock the vehicle using the button for the central locking system in the interior.
2. Unlock and open the driver's or front passenger door.
3. Lock the vehicle.
   - Lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock, or
   - Press down the lock button of the front passenger door and close the door from the outside.

The fuel filler flap can only be locked using the remote control.

**Manual operation**

If an electrical malfunction occurs, lock or unlock the vehicle using the integrated key via the door lock on the driver's door.

**Loading and closing: from the inside**

**Locking and unlocking**

Pressing the buttons locks and unlocks the doors and the tailgate when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

**Unlocking and opening**

- Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- Pull the door opener twice individually on each door: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

**Automatic locking**

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired function:
   - "Lock if no door opened"
     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if a door is not opened.
   - "Lock after start driving"
     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive away.
Doors

Automatic Soft Closing
To close the doors, push lightly. It is closed automatically.

⚠️ Danger of pinching
Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

Tailgate

Opening

Opening the large tailgate

⚠️ Note the opening height of the large tailgate
The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.

▷ Press the button on the tailgate, arrow 1.

▷ Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The key assignment on the remote control can be set variously.

▷ Push the button in the driver's footwell.

The tailgate is opened if the vehicle is stationary, provided that the tailgate has not been locked.

⚠️ Provide edge protection
Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.

Opening the small tailgate
The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

▷ Press the button on the tailgate, arrow 2.

⚠️ Provide edge protection
Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.

Closing

Recessed grips on the inside trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.
Keep the closing path clear
Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area
Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.

Automatic Soft Closing
To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only.
It is closed automatically.

Locking the vehicle
Press the button on the open tailgate.
When the driver’s door is closed, the vehicle is completely locked.

Adjusting the opening height
When adjusting the opening height, ensure that there is a clearance of at least 4 in/10 cm above the tailgate. Otherwise, the ceiling may not be high enough for the open tailgate if the load situation changes.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tailgate"
3. Turn the controller until the desired opening height is selected.

Opening the large tailgate
Note the opening height of the large tailgate
The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.
Adjust the opening height of the large tailgate according to the given situation.
The large tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate, arrow 1.
Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.
The key assignment on the remote control can be set variously.
Push the button in the driver’s footwell.
With Comfort Access, the tailgate opens with no-touch activation, refer to page 42.

Automatic tailgate operation
Adjusting the opening height
You can set how far the large tailgate should open.
Pressing the button again stops the motion. The opening procedure is likewise interrupted:

▷ When starting the engine.
▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
▷ By pressing the button in the driver's footwell.
▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

**Opening the large tailgate further**

Press and hold the button on the inside of the large tailgate, arrow 2, to open the large tailgate to the maximum opening height.

Releasing the button stops the motion.

**Closing the large tailgate**

▷ Press the button, arrow 1, on the inside of the large tailgate.

The tailgate closes automatically. Pressing again stops the motion.

▷ With Comfort Access:

Press the button on the open tailgate. Tailgate closes automatically and the vehicle is locked.

▷ Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate, arrow 1.

Pressing again stops the motion.

The closing operation is interrupted:

▷ When starting the engine.
▷ The vehicle starts off with jerks.

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. Keep the closing path clear.

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.
Manual operation
In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

⚠️ Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked
If the tailgate is blocked, do not operate it manually as the tailgate may otherwise become damaged and injury may result.
Contact your service center.

Locking separately
The tailgate can be locked separately, using the switch in the front center armrest.

▷ The tailgate is locked, arrow 1.
The small and large tailgates are locked.
▷ The tailgate is unlocked, arrow 2.

Slide the switch into the arrow 1 position. This secures the tailgate and disconnects it from the central locking system.
When the center armrest is locked, the tailgate cannot be accessed. This is beneficial when the vehicle is parked using valet service. The infrared remote control can be handed out without the key.

Emergency unlocking
Pull the handle inside the cargo area.
The tailgate is unlocked.

Comfort Access

The concept
The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.
All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, e.g., in your jacket pocket.
The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is nearby or in the passenger compartment.
Comfort Access supports the following functions:
▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
▷ Convenient closing.
▷ Unlocking of the tailgate separately.
▷ Open tailgate with no-touch activation.
▷ Starting the engine.

Functional requirements
▷ There are no external sources of interference nearby.
▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.
▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is inside the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control
The functions can be controlled by pressing the buttons of the remote control or Comfort Access.
Unlocking

Fully grasp a door handle, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

Locking

Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.

Convenient closing

Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with the finger and hold it down.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof are closed.

Monitor the closing process

Monitor the closing process to ensure that no one becomes trapped.

Unlocking the tailgate separately

Press the center button on the exterior of the tailgate to open the large tailgate, refer to page 38.

This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

The key assignment on the remote control can be set variously.

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.

Opening tailgate with no-touch activation

With Comfort Access and automatic tailgate operation, the large tailgate can be opened using the remote control you are carrying.

A sensor detects a directed foot motion in the center of the area at the rear of the car and the tailgate opens.

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens.

Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

Do not touch vehicle

With the foot motion, make sure there is steady stance and do not touch the vehicle; otherwise, there is a danger of injury, e. g. from hot exhaust system parts.

1. Position in the center behind the vehicle.
2. Move foot in the direction of travel underneath the bumper and immediately back.
The hazard warning system flashes three times.

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

Preventing inadvertent opening

In situations where the tailgate should not be opened with no-touch activation, ensure that the remote control is located beyond the range of the sensor, at least 5 ft/1.50 m from the rear of the car. Otherwise, the tailgate may be opened inadvertently, for example by an unintentional or misinterpreted movement of the foot.

Malfunction

Comfort Access may not function properly if it experiences interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

In this case, open or close the vehicle using the buttons on the remote control or use the integrated key in the door lock.

If there is a malfunction, open the tailgate with the remote control button or with the button on the tailgate.

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds to:

- Opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- Movements in the vehicle.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, e.g., during attempts to steal a wheel or when towing the car.
- Interruptions in battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly indicates tampering:

- By sounding an acoustic alarm.
- By switching on the hazard warning system.
- By flashing the high beams.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

General information

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control, Comfort Access or at the door lock the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Door lock and armed alarm system

Unlocking via the door lock will trigger the alarm on some country-specific versions.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if necessary, by emergency detection of the remote control.

Tailgate and armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened using the remote control, even if the alarm system is armed.

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The large tailgate opens slightly.

Note the opening height of the large tailgate

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again by the alarm system. The hazard warning system flashes once.
In some vehicle equipment variants, the tailgate can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first.

**Panic mode**
Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

**Switching off the alarm**
- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control.
- With Comfort Access: if you are carrying the remote control with you, pull on the door handle.

**Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror**
- The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
  - The system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking:
  - The doors, hood or tailgate is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.
  - After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:
  - The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine is started, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
  - An alarm has been triggered.

**Tilt alarm sensor**
The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.
The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

**Interior motion sensor**
The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

**Avoiding unintentional alarms**
The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:
- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on car-carrying trains, at sea or on a trailer.
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle.

**Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor**
Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.
The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.
The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

**Power windows**

**General information**

⚠️ Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves.
Opening

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.
  The window opens while the switch is held.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.
  The window opens automatically.
Pressing again stops the motion.
Convenient opening, refer to page 35, via the remote control.

Closing

⚠ Keep the closing path clear
Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◄

▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.
  The window closes while the switch is held.

▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.
  The window closes automatically.
Pressing the switch stops the motion.
Convenient operation, refer to page 35, via the remote control.
Convenient closing, refer to page 42, with Comfort Access.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted. The window reopens slightly.

⚠ Danger of pinching even with pinch protection
Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window’s closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present. ◄

⚠ No window accessories
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired. ◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

⚠ Keep the closing path clear
Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◄
For example, if there is an external danger or if ice on the windows prevents a window from closing normally, proceed as follows:
1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.
  Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.
  The window closes without pinch protection.

Safety switch

The following functions can be locked simultaneously, using the switch:

▷ Opening and closing of the rear windows using the switches in the rear.
Operation of the roller sunblinds using the switches in the rear.

Adjustment of the power rear seats.

Adjustment of the power head restraints in the rear.

### Switching on and off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Safety switch for rear operation

Press the safety switch when transporting children in the rear; otherwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision.

### Roller sunblinds

#### General information

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for example, from operating the roller blinds using the switches in the rear.

Press the safety switch in the driver's door. The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

If you are no longer able to move the roller blinds after having activated them consecutively a number of times, the system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblinds cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

### Driver's door controls

#### Roller blinds for rear side windows

Press the button.

### Rear door controls

#### Roller blind for the side windows

Press the button.

The roller blind can only be extended or retracted when the side window is closed.

#### Raising and lowering the roller blinds together

Press the button.
Panoramic-glass sunroof

General information
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately, using the same switch.

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.

⚠ Keep the closing path clear
Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.▶

⚠ Take the remote control with you
Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the roof and injure themselves.▶

Tilting the glass sunroof
Push switch upward briefly.
▶ The closed roof is tilted and the sliding visor opens slightly.
▶ The opened roof closes until it is in its tilted position. The sliding visor stays completely open.

Opening/closing the sliding visor
▶ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.
The sliding visor moves while the switch is being held.

▶ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.
The sliding visor moves automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof
When the sliding visor is open, proceed as described under Sliding visor.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together
Briefly press the switch twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and sliding visor move together. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient operation, refer to page 35, via the remote control.
Convenient closing, refer to page 42, with Comfort Access.

Comfort position
Stops the roof in the comfort position if the roof is not fully open. This reduces wind noise in the passenger compartment.
If desired, continue the movement by pressing the switch.

Pinch protection system
If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or from the tilted position during closing.
The glass sunroof opens again slightly.
Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the roof’s closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present.

Closing from the open position without pinch protection

For example, if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold.
   Pinch protection is limited and the roof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the roof closes without pinch protection.

Closing from the raised position without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it.

The roof closes without pinch protection.

Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the roof can only be operated to a limited extent.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the roof closes without pinch protection.

Keep the closing path clear

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the sunroof and sliding visor are completely closed.

The roof closes without pinch protection.

Keep the closing path clear

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.
Adjusting

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Sitting safely
The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:
▷ Safety belts, refer to page 56.
▷ Head restraints, refer to page 57.
▷ Airbags, refer to page 101.

Front seats

General information
⚠️ Do not adjust the seat while driving
Do not adjust the driver’s seat while driving, or the seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.⚠️

⚠️ Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear
Also on the front passenger side, do not incline the backrest on the front passenger side too far to the rear during driving, or there is a risk of slipping under the safety belt in the event of an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt.⚠️

Semi-electrically adjustable seats

At a glance

1  Thigh support
2  Tilt
3  Forward/backward
4  Lumbar support
5  Height
6  Backrest

Tilt

Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.
Forward/backward

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly to make sure it engages properly.

Height

Move the button in the required direction.

Backrest

Move the button in the required direction.

Electrically adjustable seats

At a glance

1  Lumbar support
2  Backrest width
3  Shoulder support
4  Backrest
5  Forward/back, height, tilt
6  Thigh support

Note

The seat setting for the driver’s seat is stored for the remote control currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the Function, refer to page 36, for this is activated.

Adjustments in detail

1. Forward/back.
2. Height.
   ![](image1)

   ![](image2)

4. Backrest tilt.
   ![](image3)

5. Thigh support.
   ![](image4)

---

**Lumbar support**

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

- Press the front/rear section of the switch.
  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the switch.
  The curvature is shifted up/down.

**Backrest width**

Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the backrest width temporarily opens fully.

**Shoulder support**

Also supports the back in the shoulder area:

- Results in a relaxed seating position.
Reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

**Active seat**
Active adjustment of the seat cushion's contours reduces muscular tension and fatigue to help prevent lower back pain.

Press the button. The LED lights up.

**Front seat heating**

**Switching on**
Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the drive is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When ECO PRO, refer to page 179, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

**Switching off**
Press the button longer.
The LEDs go out.

**Temperature distribution**
The heating action in the seat cushion and backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "Climate"
2. "Seat heating distribution"
3. Select the required seat.

4. Turn the controller to set the temperature distribution.

**Active seat ventilation, front**
The seat cushion and backrest surfaces are cooled by means of integrated fans.

The ventilation rapidly cools the seat, e. g., if the vehicle interior is overheated or for continuous cooling at high temperatures.

**Switching on**
Press the button once for each ventilation level.
The highest level is active when three LEDs are lit.

If when the seat ventilation is turned on the Maximum Cooling function is activated, the seat ventilation automatically switches to the highest level. When the Maximum Cooling function is switched off, the unit switches back to the previously set level.

After a short time, the system automatically moves down one level in order to prevent excessive cooling.

**Switching off**

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

**Rear seats**

**General information**

The switches for adjusting the seats are located on the center armrest of the rear seats.

⚠️ **Center armrest**

When folding down the center armrest, ensure that the area below the center head restraint is clear. Otherwise, injury may result.

**Manually adjustable seats**

**At a glance**

1  Forward/backward
2  Backrest

**Electrically adjustable seats**

**At a glance**

1  Forward/backward
2  Shoulder support
3  Backrest, head restraint

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the level, move the seat forward or back slightly until it engages.

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off.
The seats cannot be adjusted if the safety switch for the power windows has been pressed.

Adjustments in detail
1. Forward/back.

2. Backrest tilt.

3. Head restraint.

Shoulder support
Also supports the back in the shoulder area:
▷ Results in a relaxed seating position.
▷ Reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Lumbar support
The contour of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

▷ Press the front/rear section of the switch. The curvature is increased/decreased.
▷ Press the upper/lower section of the switch. The curvature is shifted up/down.
Reset to standard position

Maintain pressure on the button until the system completes the adjustment.

Rear seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.
The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.
If the drive is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.
When ECO PRO, refer to page 179, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Switching off

Press the button longer.
The LEDs go out.

Temperature distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "Climate"
2. "Seat heating rear"
3. Select the required seat.

Switching on

Press the button longer.
The LEDs go out.

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.
The highest level is active when three LEDs are lit.
If when the seat ventilation is turned on the Maximum Cooling function is activated, the seat ventilation automatically switches to the highest level. When the Maximum Cooling function is switched off, the unit switches to the previously set level.
Switching off
Press the button longer.
The LEDs go out.

Safety belts

Seats with safety belt
The vehicle has four or five seating positions, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

Notes
Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving away.
Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.
▷ The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.
▷ The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.
▷ The center rear seat belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.

One person per safety belt
Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap.

Putting on the belt
Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.
The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects, or be pinched.

Warning
Reduction of restraining effect
Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension across your lap; otherwise, the retention effect of the safety belt may be reduced.

Buckling the belt
Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the belt
1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its reel.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat
The indicator lamp flashes or lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.
The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts
In the case of strain caused by accidents or damage:
Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.
Checking and replacing safety belts
Have the work performed only by your service center; otherwise, it cannot be ensured that this safety feature will function properly.

Front head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint
A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjusting the head restraint
Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Height
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance
Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Active head restraint
In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

Reduced protective function
▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, on the head restraints.
▷ Only attach accessories approved by BMW to the seat or head restraint.

Otherwise, the protective function of the active head restraint will be impaired and the personal safety of the occupants will be endangered.

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints
▷ To raise: pull.
▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Adjusting the height: electrical head restraints
Adjusting electrically.

Distance to back of head: manual head restraints
▷ Forward: by pulling
▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
Distance to back of head: electrical head restraints
The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the shoulder support is adjusted.

Adjusting the side extensions
Fold forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing
The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints
Correctly adjusted head restraint
A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

⚠ Adjusting the head restraint
Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Height
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance
Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints
▷ To raise: pull.
▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Adjusting the height: electrical head restraints
Move the switch in the desired direction.

Adjusting the side extensions
Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.
Removing: manual head restraints
Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Pull the head restraint upward as far as possible.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Before transporting passengers
Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable.

Removing: electrical head restraints
For technical reasons, the head restraint cannot be removed.

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory

General information

Front

Rear

Two different driver's seat, exterior mirror, and steering wheel positions can be stored and retrieved for each remote control. The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored.

Storing
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. Press the button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2. The LED goes out.

If the M button is pressed accidentally:
Press the button again.
The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

Do not retrieve the memory while driving
Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident.

Comfort function
1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.
The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

**Safety mode**

1. Close the driver's door or switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

**Calling up of a seat position deactivated**

After a brief period, the calling up of stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- Open or close the door or tailgate.
- Press a button on the remote control.
- Press the Start/Stop button.

**Mirrors**

**Exterior mirrors**

**At a glance**

1. Adjusting
2. Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
3. Fold in and out

**General information**

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

**Estimating distances correctly**

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident.

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the mirror setting is stored for the remote control in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the setting for this function is active.

**Selecting a mirror**

To change over to the other mirror:

- Slide the mirror changeover switch.

**Adjusting electrically**

The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

**Saving positions**

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page 59.

**Adjusting manually**

If an electrical malfunction occurs, for example, press the edges of the mirror glass.

**Automatic Curb Monitor**

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass tilts downward slightly on the front passenger side. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

**Activating**

1. Slide the mirror changeover switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage transmission position R.
Deactivating
Slide the mirror changeover switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Fold in and out
Press the button.
Possible up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.
For example, this is advantageous
▷ In car washes.
▷ In narrow streets.
▷ For folding back mirrors that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature
Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used for control in the Interior rear view mirror, refer to page 61.

Interior rearview mirror
Reducing the blinding effect
From behind when driving at night: turn the knob.

Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature
The concept
Photocells are used for control:
▷ In the mirror glass.
▷ On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirement
For proper operation:
▷ Keep the photocells clean.
▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.
Steering wheel

General information

⚠️ Do not adjust while driving
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident.

Manual steering wheel adjustment

1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back.

Power steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the position

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page 59.

Steering wheel heating

Switching on/off

Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.
Transporting children safely

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The right place for children

Note
Children in the vehicle
Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors.

Children should always be in the rear
Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

Transporting children in the rear
Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in child restraint fixing systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint fixing system can no longer be used, due to their age, weight and size.

Children on the front passenger seat
Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Installing child restraint fixing systems

Before mounting
If the rear seat backrests are adjustable:
Before mounting child restraint fixing systems, return all of the rear seat backrests to the basic position.

Notes
Manufacturer’s information for child restraint fixing systems
To select, mount and use child restraint fixing systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be impaired.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags
After installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 103.
Deactivating the front passenger airbags
If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.

Seat position and height
Before installing a child restraint fixing system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and bring it up to medium height to obtain the best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

Do not change the seat position and height after this.

Backrest width
Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Backrest width for the child seat
Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced.

Child seat security
The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be locked against pulling out for mounting the child restraint fixing systems.

Locking the safety belt
1. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
2. Secure the child restraint fixing system with the belt.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull it taut against the child restraint fixing system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt
1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint fixing system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system
LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Note
Manufacturer’s information for LATCH child restraint fixing systems
To mount and use the LATCH child restraint fixing systems, observe the operating and safety information from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced.
Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

Correctly engage the lower LATCH anchors

Make sure that the lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint fixing system is resting snugly against the backrest; otherwise, the degree of protection offered may be reduced.

Before mounting the LATCH child restraint fixing system, pull the belt away from the child restraint fixing system.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the seat cover between the backrest and the seat cushion at the marked locations.

Exposing the lower LATCH anchors

1. Reach between the seat cushion and the backrest.
2. Detach the seat cover from the Velcro® fastener.
3. Pull the seat cover forward.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Move the seat to its rearmost position.
2. For better accessibility, tilt the backrest back slightly.
3. Fold the leather cover on the seat forward.
4. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
5. Make sure that both lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint fixing system is resting snugly against the backrest.
6. After mounting the system, move the backrest back up slightly so that the child restraint fixing system rests against the backrest.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems on power rear seats

1. Before mounting, adjust the seats to their basic position, refer to page 55.
2. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
3. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

Mounting points

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are two outer or three mounting points for child restraint fixing systems with a tether strap.
Fold up the middle mounting point.

**LATCH mounting eyes**
Only use the mounting eyes for the upper LATCH retaining strap to secure child restraint fixing systems; otherwise, the mounting eyes could be damaged.

**Retaining strap guide**

**Retaining strap**
Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed over the head restraints or sharp edges and is free of twisting on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt cannot properly secure the child restraint fixing system in an accident.

1. **Direction of travel**
2. **Head restraint.**
3. **Hook for upper retaining strap**
4. **Mounting point/eye**
5. **Seat backrest**
6. **Upper retaining strap**

**Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point**

1. Raise or remove head restraints as needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
5. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

**Locking the doors and windows**

**Rear doors**

Push the locking lever on the rear doors down. The door can now be opened from the outside only.

**Safety switch for the rear**

Press the button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 45.
Driving

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Start/Stop button

The concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

The engine starts if the brake pedal is pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Ignition on

Press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster light up for varying lengths of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition switches off automatically:

▷ When the vehicle is locked, if the low beams are switched on.
▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.
▷ If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

Ignition off

Press the Start/Stop button again, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.

Ignition automatically cuts off while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is stopped:

▷ During locking, also with the low beams activated.
▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are switched off.
▷ When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the low beams are switched off.
▷ While the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, if the driver's door is open and the low beams are switched off.

When the ignition is switched off, by opening or closing the driver's door or unbuckling the driver's seat belt, the radio ready state remains active.

Radio ready state

Activate radio ready state:
When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.

When the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

Radio ready state switches off automatically:
- After approx. 8 minutes.
- When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

### Starting the engine

#### General information

**Enclosed areas**

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas; otherwise, breathing of exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas.

**Unattended vehicle**

Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running; doing so poses a risk of danger.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, set the parking brake and place the transmission in position P or neutral to prevent the vehicle from moving.

**Repeated starting in quick succession**

Avoid repeated unsuccessful attempts to start the vehicle or starting the vehicle several times in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned, posing a risk of overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds.

#### Starting the engine

Press on the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button. The engine is cranked until it starts.

### Engine stop

#### General information

**Take the remote control with you**

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot start the engine.

**Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required**

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb.

**Before driving into a car wash**

In order for the vehicle to be able to roll into a car wash, heed the information regarding Washing in automatic car washes, refer to page 217.

#### Switching off the engine

1. Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - The engine is switched off.
   - The radio ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.
Auto Start/Stop function

The concept
The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in a traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off. Certain vehicle components may experience additional wear as a result of this system.

Automatic mode
The Auto Start/Stop function is operational after each engine start.

This function is activated at speeds faster than about 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.

Engine stop
The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:
Automatic transmission:
▷ The selector lever is in transmission position D.
▷ The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

The air flow of the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster
The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been satisfied.

Note
The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:
▷ External temperature below approx. +37 °F/+3 ℃.
▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
▷ The passenger compartment has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
▷ After driving in reverse.
▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
▷ HDC is activated.
▷ The parking assistant is activated.
▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
▷ The transmission selector lever is in position N or S/M.

Starting the engine
The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:
▷ Automatic transmission:
  By releasing the brake pedal.
  When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode
After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met.
▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
▷ The hood was unlocked.
Some indicator lamps light up for varying lengths of time.
The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

**Note**
Even if driving away was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the passenger compartment when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Automatic transmission: the transmission position is changed from D to N, R, or M/S.
- Automatic transmission: the transmission position is changed from P to N, D, R, or M/S.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- Excessive cooling of the passenger compartment when the heating is switched on.

### Preventing an automatic engine stop with automatic transmission

#### The concept
To make it possible to drive away very quickly, such as at an intersection, the automatic engine stop can be actively prevented.

#### Preventing an engine stop using the brake pedal
The engine stop can be actively prevented within one second after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

- Immediately after the vehicle comes to a standstill, briefly press the brake pedal forcefully.
- Then press the brake pedal with normal braking force.

## Activating/deactivating the system manually

### Using the button

Press the button.

- LED comes on: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.
  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

### Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e.g., when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
   Transmission position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

### Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, such as when the driver is detected to be absent.
**Malfunction**

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

**Parking brake**

**The concept**

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

**Setting**

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb.

**While driving**

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the button is being pulled.

The indicator lamp lights up red, a signal sounds and the brake lamps light up.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models.

If the vehicle is braked to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, the parking brake remains set.

**Releasing**

Press the switch while the brake pedal is pressed or transmission position P is engaged.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is released.

Take the remote control with you
Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake.

**Automatic release**

For automatic release, operate the accelerator pedal.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

Subject to the following requirements, the parking brake is automatically released by operation of the accelerator pedal:

- Engine on.
- Drive position engaged.
- Driver buckled in and doors closed.

**Manual release**

The parking brake can be released manually in the event of a power failure or electrical fault.

Before releasing, secure the vehicle against rolling
Before releasing the parking brake manually, and whenever you park the vehicle with the
parking brake released, ensure that position P of the automatic transmission is engaged.

Secure the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the inclination of the road, e.g., with a wheel chock; otherwise, there is the danger of the vehicle rolling. ◄

Unlocking

1. Raise the rear cargo floor cover in the cargo area, arrow 1, and fasten it with a retaining strap.

2. Remove the release tool from the onboard vehicle tool kit.

3. Take out the floor trim in the cargo area, removing the clips with a screwdriver, arrows.

4. Hook the release tool into the release point, arrow.

5. Forcefully pull the release tool up against the resistance until you notice a marked increase in the resistance and the parking brake releases audibly.

Have the malfunction corrected
If the parking brake has been released manually in response to a malfunction, only technicians can return it to operation.

Have the malfunction corrected by your service center. ◄

After a power failure

Only put the parking brake into operation after a power failure

The parking brake should only be put into operation again if it was manually released due to an interruption in the supply of electrical power. Otherwise, it cannot be ensured that the parking brake will function properly. ◄
Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Press the switch while the brake is depressed or transmission position P is engaged.

It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models.

Automatic Hold

The concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving away.

A door is opened and driver's safety belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is stationary.

The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

The indicator lamp switches from green to red and the letters AUTO H go out.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models.

Before driving away:

- Release the parking brake manually.
- Reactivate Automatic Hold.

Leaving the vehicle with the engine running

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and ensure that the parking brake is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.

For your safety

Under the following conditions, Automatic Hold is automatically deactivated and the parking brake is set:

- The engine is switched off.

Activating

This function can be activated when the driver's door is closed and the safety belt is fastened, and while driving.

Press the button.

The LED and the letters AUTO H light up.

The indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic Hold is activated.

Deactivating

Press the button again.

The LED and the letters AUTO H go out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press on the brake pedal to deactivate it.

When the parking brake is set manually, Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically.
Driving
Automatic Hold is activated: the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling after braking to a standstill.

The indicator lamp lights up green.
Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.
The brake is released automatically.
The indicator lamp goes out.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Before driving into a car wash
Deactivate Automatic Hold; otherwise, the parking brake will be set when the vehicle is stationary and the vehicle will no longer be able to roll.

Parking
The parking brake is automatically set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold.

The indicator lamp changes from green to red.
The parking brake is not set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Automatic Hold remains activated during an engine stop brought about by the Auto Start/Stop function.

Take the remote control with you
Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake.

Malfunction
In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, when leaving it.

Turn signal, high beams, headlamp flasher

Turn signal

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.
To switch off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Triple turn signal activation
Press the lever to the resistance point.
The turn signal flashes three times.
The function can be activated or deactivated:
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Malfunction
In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, when leaving it.
**Signaling briefly**
Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

**High beams, headlamp flasher**

- High beams, arrow 1.
- Headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

**Washer/wiper system**

**Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe**

- **⚠️ Do not switch on the wipers if frozen**
  Do not switch on the wipers if they are frozen onto the windshield; otherwise, the wiper blades and the windshield wiper motor may be damaged.

- **⚠️ No wiper operation on dry windshield**
  Do not use the windshield wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

**Switching on**

Press the wiper levers up.
The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- **▷ Normal wiping speed: press up once.**
  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.

- **▷ Fast wiping speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.**
  The wipers switch to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

**Switching off and brief wipe**

Press the wiper levers down.
The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- **▷ Brief wipe: press down once.**
- **▷ To switch off normal wipe: press down once.**
- **▷ To switch off fast wipe: press down twice.**
Rain sensor

The concept
The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

Activating/deactivating
Press the button on the wiper lever.
The LED in the steering column stalk lights up.

Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes
Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, damage could be caused by undesired wiper activation.

Rain sensor, sensitivity
Turn the thumbwheel.

Clean the windshield, headlamps
Pull the lever.
The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlamps are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle lights are switched on.

⚠ Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures
Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield; otherwise, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use antifreeze.
Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; otherwise, you could damage the pump.

Windshield washer nozzles
The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers
Required when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for example.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Under frosty conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen onto the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.
After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

⚠️ Fold the wipers back down
Before switching the ignition on, fold the wipers back down to the windshield; otherwise, the wipers may become damaged when they are switched on.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the wiper levers down. The wipers move to their resting position and are ready for operation.

### Washer fluid

#### General information

⚠️ Antifreeze for washer fluid
Antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from sources of ignition.
Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.
Follow the instructions on the container.

### Washer fluid reservoir

⚠️ Adding washer fluid
Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.
Otherwise, there is the danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer’s recommendations.
Mix the washer fluid before adding to maintain the correct mixing ratio.
For the capacity, refer to technical data.

### Automatic transmission with Steptronic

#### Transmission positions

**D Drive, automatic position**
Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

**R is Reverse**
Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

**N is Neutral**
Use in automatic car washes, for example. The vehicle can roll.
When the ignition is switched off, refer to page 67, position P is engaged automatically.

**P Park**
Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.
P is engaged automatically:

- After the engine is switched off when the vehicle is in radio ready state, refer to page 67, or when the ignition is switched off, refer to page 67, and when position R or D is engaged.
- With the ignition is off, if position N is engaged.
- If the safety belt is unbuckled, the driver’s door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and transmission position R or D is engaged.
Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that position P of the automatic transmission is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.

**Kickdown**

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Press on the gas pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

**Engaging the transmission position**

- Transmission position P can only be disengaged if the engine is running and the brake pedal is pressed.
- With the vehicle stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise, the shift command will not be executed: shift lock.

⚠️ Depress the brake until you start driving

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

**Engaging D, R and N**

Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary. After releasing the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

**Engaging P**

Press unlock button, in order to:

- Engage R.
- Shift out of P.

**Sport program DS and manual mode M/ S**

**Activating the sport program**

Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.
The sport program of the transmission is activated.

**Activating the M/S manual mode**

1. Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.
2. Push the selector lever forward or backward. Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

Once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

**Switching to manual mode**

▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

**Ending the sport program/manual mode**

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Shift paddles for Sport automatic transmission**

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission temporarily switches to manual mode.

If the shift paddles are not used and the vehicle is not accelerated for a certain time, the system switches back into automatic mode if the selector lever is in transmission position D.

▷ Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
▷ Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

**Displays in the instrument cluster**

The transmission position is displayed, e.g.: P.
Displays

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Instrument cluster

1 Fuel gauge  87
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator/warning lamps  84
4 Tachometer  87
5 Oil temperature  87
6 Electronic displays  81
7 Reset miles  87
Electronic displays

Overview, instrument cluster

1  Messages, e.g. Check Control  84
   Time  87
   Date  87
2  Range  88
3  Computer  91
   Speed limit detection  89
4  Navigation display, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.
   Service requirements  88
   Miles/trip miles  87
5  Selection list, such as for the radio  91
   Current fuel consumption  88
   Energy recovery  88
   External temperature  87
   Transmission display  79

Multifunctional instrument display

The concept
The instrument display is a variable display. When the driving mode is changed, the appearance is changed to reflect the new driving mode. The change of appearance can be deactivated in the Control Display.

Some of the displays in the instrument display may differ from the way they are shown in this owner's manual.
**At a glance**

1. Fuel gauge 87  
2. Indicator/warning lamps 84  
3. Speedometer  
4. Variable displays  
5. Tachometer 87  
6. Oil temperature 87  
7. Computer 91  
8. Reset miles 87  

**Switching the change of display on and off**

You can set whether the instrument display changes to the ECO PRO displays or Sport displays automatically when you switch driving modes.

**Without Professional navigation system**

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "ECO PRO Info"

**Switching the zoom function on/off (with Professional navigation system)**

You can program whether the current speed is to appear enlarged in the speedometer.

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Magnifier function"
ECO PRO displays

In ECO PRO driving mode, the instrument display switches to the ECO PRO displays. These displays support a driving style that saves on fuel consumption with more prominent representation of the efficiency display and various ECO PRO tips.
**Sport displays**

1. Speedometer
2. Tachometer
3. Transmission display
4. Variable displays

In the Sport and Sport+ modes, the instrument display switches to the sport displays. This display supports a sporty driving style with more prominent representation of the tachometer, the transmission displays, and the vehicle speed.

**Check Control**

**The concept**

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

**Indicator/warning lamps**

**Instrument cluster**
**Instrument display**

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors. Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

**Overview: indicator/warning lamps**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function or system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Turn signal" /></td>
<td>Turn signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake" /></td>
<td>Parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking brake in Canadian models" /></td>
<td>Parking brake in Canadian models</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Automatic Hold" /></td>
<td>Automatic Hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Front fog lamps" /></td>
<td>Front fog lamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="High beams" /></td>
<td>High beams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="High-beam Assistant" /></td>
<td>High-beam Assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Parking lamps, headlamp control" /></td>
<td>Parking lamps, headlamp control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Active Cruise Control" /></td>
<td>Active Cruise Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control" /></td>
<td>Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cruise control" /></td>
<td>Cruise control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lane departure warning" /></td>
<td>Lane departure warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="DSC Dynamic Stability Control" /></td>
<td>DSC Dynamic Stability Control or DTC Dynamic Traction Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tire Pressure Monitor" /></td>
<td>Tire Pressure Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Flat Tire Monitor" /></td>
<td>Flat Tire Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Safety belts" /></td>
<td>Safety belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Airbag system" /></td>
<td>Airbag system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Steering system" /></td>
<td>Steering system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Emissions" /></td>
<td>Emissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Emissions in Canadian models" /></td>
<td>Emissions in Canadian models</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Brake system" /></td>
<td>Brake system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Brake system in Canadian models" /></td>
<td>Brake system in Canadian models</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS Antilock Brake System in Canadian models

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored

Text messages
Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages
Additional information, such as on the cause of a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

The supplementary text of urgent messages is displayed on the Control Display automatically.

Symbols
Depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

▷ "Owner's Manual"
Display additional information about the Check Control message in the integrated owner's manual.

▷ "Service request"
Contact the service partner.

▷ "Roadside Assistance"
Contact Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages
Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.
These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

▷ Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion
Special messages that are displayed during driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.
Fuel gauge

The vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary. Notes on refueling, refer to page 184.

Tachometer

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Engine oil temperature

▷ Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
▷ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
▷ Hot engine: the pointer is at the high temperature end. A Check Control message is displayed in addition.

Coolant temperature

If the coolant along with the engine becomes too hot, a Check Control message is displayed. Check the coolant level, refer to page 202.

Odometer and trip odometer

▷ Odometer, arrow 1.
▷ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

Display/reset miles

Press the knob.
▷ When the ignition is switched off, the time, external temperature and odometer are displayed.
▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

External temperature

External temperature warning

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds. A Check Control message is displayed. There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, there can be a risk of ice on roads. Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, for example, to avoid the increased risk of an accident.

Time

The time is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster. Setting the time and time format, refer to page 93.

Date

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster. Setting the date and date format, refer to page 94.
Range

After the reserve range is reached:
> A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
> The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.
>
When a dynamic driving style is used, such as when cornering quickly, operation of the engine is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Refuel promptly
Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km, or operation of the engine is not ensured and damage may occur.

Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"
The range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Range when destination guidance is activated in the navigation system

When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system, the range up to the destination is displayed.

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current fuel consumption. You can check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"
The bar display for the current fuel consumption is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Energy recovery

The kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

Service requirements

Display

The driving distance or the time to the next scheduled maintenance is displayed briefly after the ignition is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the remote control by the service specialist.

With TeleService, data regarding the service status or legally mandated inspections of your vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before the service due date.

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbols</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="OK" /></td>
<td>No service is currently required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="triangle" /></td>
<td>The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="triangle" /></td>
<td>The service deadline has already passed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Entering appointment dates**

Enter the dates for the required inspections. Ensure that the vehicle date and time are set correctly.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ![calendar](image) "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Adjust the settings.
7. Confirm.
   The entered date is stored.

**Automatic Service Request**

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

**Speed limit detection with No Passing Information**

**The concept**

**Speed limit detection**

Speed limit detection uses a symbol in the shape of a traffic sign to display the currently detected speed limit. The camera at the base of the interior rearview mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with vehicle interior data, such as for the rain sensor, and are displayed depending on the situation. The system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

**No Passing Information**

No Passing Information displays in the instrument cluster the beginnings and ends of no passing zones detected by the camera. The system accounts for only the beginnings and ends of No Passing zones marked by signs.

No display is shown:
- In countries where No Passing zones are primarily identified with road markings.
- On routes without signage.
- Where there are railroad crossings, highway markings or other situations where no signage is present, but passing would not be permitted.
Notes

Personal judgment
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.
The system assists the driver and does not replace the human eye.

At a glance

Camera

The camera is located near the base of the mirror.
Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rear view mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the onboard computer. No Passing Information is displayed together with activated speed limit information.

Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Speed limit detection

Current speed limit.

Speed limit detection is not available.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

No Passing Information

▷ Start of No Passing zone.
▷ End of No Passing zone.
▷ No Passing Information not available.

No Passing Information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:
▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
▷ When signs are concealed by objects.
▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
▷ When driving toward bright lights.
▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in the road network.

When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.

If the traffic signs are non-conforming.

During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

The concept

The following can be operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel:

- Current audio source.
- Redial on telephone.
- Activation of the voice activation system.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting

On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

Using the thumbwheel, select the desired setting and confirm it by pressing the thumbwheel.

Computer

Indication in the info display

The information from the onboard computer is shown in the info display in the instrument cluster.

Calling up information on the info display

Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information on the info display:

- Range.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Date.
- Speed limit detection.
- Time of arrival.

When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
Distance to destination
When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

Arrow view of navigation system.
When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
When the arrow view in the Head-up Display is inactive.

ECO PRO bonus range.

Adjusting the info display
You can select what information from the on-board computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. Select the desired displays.

Information in detail

Range
Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.
It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km. If there is only enough fuel left for less than 45 miles/80 km, the color of the display changes.

Average fuel consumption
This is calculated for the period during which the engine is running.
The average fuel consumption is calculated on the basis of various distances.

Average speed
Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped do not enter into the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values
Press and hold the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Distance to destination
The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.
The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Time of arrival
The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.
The time must be correctly set.

Speed limit detection
Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 89, function.

Speed limit
Display of a speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.
The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit
1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
The speed limit is stored.

**Activating/deactivating the limit**
1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

**Setting your current speed as the limit**
1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.
   The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

**Trip computer**
The vehicle features two types of computer.
▷ "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
▷ "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

**Resetting the trip computer**
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.
   "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

**Display on the Control Display**
Display the onboard computer or trip computer on the Control Display.
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

**Resetting the fuel consumption or speed**
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Cons." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

**Settings on the Control Display**

**Time**

**Setting the time zone**
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone"
4. Select the desired time zone.
The time zone is stored.

**Setting the time**
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"

4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.
The time is stored.

**Setting the time format**
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.
The time format is stored.

**Date**

**Setting the date**
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.
The date is stored.

**Setting the date format**
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.
The date format is stored.

**Language**

**Setting the language**
To set the language on the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.
**Units of measure**

**Setting the units of measure**
To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.

4. Select the desired unit.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Brightness**

**Setting the brightness**
To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"

4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.
Lamps

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance

1. Rear fog lamps
2. Front fog lamps
3. Automatic headlamp control, Adaptive Light Control, High-beam Assistant, Welcome lamps, Daytime running lights
4. Lamps off, daytime running lights
5. Parking lamps, daytime running lights
6. Low beams, welcome lamps, High-beam Assistant
7. Instrument lighting

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

Parking lamps
Switch position \( \text{illum} \): the vehicle lamps light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lamps for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamps, refer to page 97.

Low beams
Switch position \( \text{low} \) with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

Welcome lamps
When parking the vehicle, leave the switch in position \( \text{illum} \) or \( \text{low} \): the parking and interior lamps light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome lights"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Parking lamps/low beams, headlamp control

General information
Switch position: 0, \( \text{illum} \), \( \text{low} \)
Headlamp courtesy delay feature
The low beams stay lit for a short while after the ignition is switched off, if the lamps are switched off and the headlamp flasher is switched on.

Setting the duration
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.: s"
4. Set the duration.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatic headlamp control
Switch position : the low beams are switched on and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.
A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.
The low beams always stay on when the fog lamps are switched on.

Personal responsibility
The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions.
For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the lamps manually under these conditions.

Daytime running lights
With the ignition switched on, the daytime running lights light up in position 0, or . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lamps light up in position .

Activating/deactivating
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Roadside parking lamps
The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on
With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off
Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.
Adaptive light control

The concept
Adaptive light control is a variable headlamp control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves, e.g., on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, corner-illuminating lamp is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

Activating
Switch position 🚘 with the ignition switched on.

The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When driving in reverse, only the turning lamp is active.

Self-leveling headlights
The self-leveling headlights feature adapts the light distribution to the contours of the road.

The light distribution is lowered on hilltops to avoid blinding oncoming traffic and tilted in depressions to increase visibility.

Malfunction
A Check Control message is displayed.
Adaptive light control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High-beam Assistant

The concept
When the low beams are switched on, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating

1. Turn the light switch to 🚘 or 🚗.
2. Press the button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the lights are switched on, the high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.
Switching the high beams on and off manually

▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
▷ High beams off/headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light. To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

⚠️ Personal responsibility
The high-beam assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver’s personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk.

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.
▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
▷ At low speeds.

▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Camera

The camera is located near the base of the mirror.
Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rear view mirror clean and clear.

Fog lamps

Front fog lamps
The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on.

Press the button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlamp control, refer to page 97, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lamps.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting
The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness using the thumbwheel.
**Interior lamps**

**General information**
The interior lamps, footwell lamps, entry lamps and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some of these lamps is influenced by the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting.

1. Interior lamps
2. Reading lamp

**Switching the interior lamps on and off**

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

**Reading lamps**

Press the button.

Reading lamps are located at the front and rear next to the interior lamps.

When the interior lamps are switched off permanently, the reading lamps cannot be switched on.

---

**Bang & Olufsen High End Surround Sound System**

**Adjusting speaker lighting**

All speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. The lighting can be individually set.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Bang & Olufsen"
4. Select the desired lighting setting.
   - "Off": no lighting.
   - "Reduced": all speakers in the field of view are hidden while driving.
   - "On": all speakers are always illuminated.
Safety

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Airbags

Front airbags
Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint.

Head airbags
In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

In the event of a rollover accident, the head airbag can help to prevent the person from being thrown out of the vehicle.

Side airbags
In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.
Knee airbag
The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Protective action
Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags
▷ Keep at a distance from the airbags.
▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o’clock and 9 o’clock positions, to keep the danger of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible if the airbag is triggered.
▷ There should be no people, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
▷ Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not rest against the head airbag; otherwise, injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.
▷ Do not remove the airbag restraint system.
▷ Do not remove the steering wheel.
▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, cover them or modify them in any way.
▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the headliner.

Even when all instructions are followed closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

In the case of a malfunction, deactivation and after triggering of the airbags
Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, there is the danger of burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by your service center or a workshop that has the necessary authorization for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired triggering of the airbag, either of which could result in injury.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system
When the ignition is switch on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning
▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.
When there is a malfunction, have the airbag system checked immediately

When there is a malfunction, have the airbag system checked immediately; otherwise, there is a risk that the system does not function as expected in the event of an accident despite corresponding severity of the accident.▶

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

The system determines whether the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body.

The front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the front passenger airbags may not function properly.▶

Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, see the safety notes and instructions under Children on the front passenger seat.▶

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To make sure that the occupied seat cushion can be evaluated correctly

▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by the manufacturer of your vehicle.

▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.

▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

Indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, especially in the child seats that were required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make
sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

**Strength of the driver's and front passenger airbag**
The strength with which the driver's and front passenger airbags are triggered depends on the position of the driver's and front passenger seats.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats when a corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

**Calibrating the front seats**
A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Move the respective seat forward all the way.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position. The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

![Unobstructed area of movement]

Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects.

---

**Tire Pressure Monitor TPM**

**The concept**
The tire inflation pressure is measured in the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

**Functional requirements**
The system must have been reset when the inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly. Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

**System limits**

⚠️ **Sudden tire damage**

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.

The system does not operate correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

- For a mounted wheel without TPM electronics.
- When the TPM is disturbed by other systems or devices with the same radio frequency.

**Status display**
The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (1) "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

**Status display**
The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.
A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

A correction is only necessary if this is indicated by the TPM

**Wheels, green**
The tire inflation pressure is equal to the target state.

**One wheel is yellow**
A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

**All wheels are yellow**
▷ A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.
▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.
▷ A flat tire in one or more tires while the system is being reset.

**Wheels, gray**
The system cannot detect a flat tire. Reasons for this may be:
▷ TPM is being reset.
▷ Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency.
▷ Malfunction.

**For Canadian models: additional information**
The status display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures and tire temperatures.

When correcting the tire inflation pressures, note the following:
The tire pressure increases as the tire temperature increases.
Therefore, only correct the tire inflation pressure when the tire is at the ambient temperature. Compare the displayed tire temperature with the external temperature in the instrument cluster.

**Resetting the system**
Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Reset the tire pressure using "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving for a few minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are applied as set values. The resetting process is completed automatically during driving. The tires are shown in green and "TPM active" is shown on the Control Display.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. If you drive away again, the process resumes automatically.

If a flat tire is detected during a reset, all tires are displayed in yellow.

**Low tire pressure message**
The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.
▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.
Run-flat tires, refer to page 194, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

Do not continue driving without run-flat tires
Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.

When a low inflation pressure is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

**Actions in the event of a flat tire**

**Normal tires**

1. Identify the damaged tire.
   Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.
   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
   If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.

2. Rectify the flat tire.
   Use of tire sealant, e.g., the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

**Run-flat tires**

**Maximum speed**
You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

**Continued driving with a flat tire**
If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.
   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:
The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on the cargo load and the driving style and conditions.
For a vehicle containing an average load, the possible driving distance is approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When the vehicle is driven with a damaged tire, its handling characteristics change, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance, and altered self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be smaller or greater depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

**Continued driving with a flat tire**
Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.

**Final tire failure**
Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.
Message when the system was not reset

A Check Control message is displayed.
The system detected a wheel change but was not reset.
Warnings regarding the current tire inflation pressure are not reliable.
Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.
Display in the following situations:
▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the service center check it if necessary.
▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by your service center.
▷ TPM could not be fully reset. Reset the system again.
▷ Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the disturbance, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.
It detects a pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.
In the event of a pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel change. This is detected and reported as a flat tire.

**Functional requirements**

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

**System limits**

⚠️ Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.

A natural, even pressure loss in all four tires cannot be detected. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

▷ When the system has not been initialized.
▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration.
▷ When driving with snow chains.

**Status display**

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

**Initialization**

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization with "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

**Indication of a flat tire**

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 194, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

⚠️ Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

**Actions in the event of a flat tire**

**Normal tires**

1. Identify the damaged tire.
Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.
If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.

2. Rectify the flat tire.

**Run-flat tires**

**Maximum speed**
You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

**Continued driving with a flat tire**
If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:
1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.
   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:
The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on the cargo load and the driving style and conditions.
For a vehicle containing an average load, the possible driving distance is approx. 50 miles/80 km.
When the vehicle is driven with a damaged tire, its handling characteristics change, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance, and altered self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be smaller or greater depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

⚠️ **Continued driving with a flat tire**
Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀

⚠️ **Final tire failure**
Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◀

**Collision warning with braking function**

**The concept**
If the vehicle is equipped with Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, the collision warning is controlled via the cruise control radar sensor.
The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h. The time of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.
The collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.
It responds to moving objects that are within the detection range of the radar system.

When the vehicle is intentionally brought into contact with a vehicle, the collision warning is delayed to avoid false warnings.

**Switching on/off**

**Switching the warning function on/off**

Press the button

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Setting the warning time**

The .

These settings have no effect on the time of the warning with which Active Cruise Control ACC prompts the driver to intervene or brake.

1. Activate collision warning.
2. Activate the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Display**

**Warning stages**

**Prewarning**

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

**Acute warning with braking function**

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The acute warning prompts the driver to intervene and, if there is the danger of a collision, is accompanied by a braking intervention.

The braking intervention is executed with limited braking force and for a brief period only. The intervention will not bring the vehicle to a complete standstill.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

⚠️ **Adapting your speed and driving style**

The acute warning does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by pressing on the accelerator or by actively moving the steering wheel.

When towing or tow-starting the vehicle, switch off the collision warning with braking function to prevent undesired interventions.

The braking function is deactivated if the DSC Dynamic Stability Control or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is deactivated.
Display in the instrument cluster
The collision warning can be issued in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and acoustically.

Warning stages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🚁</td>
<td>The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Increase distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚁</td>
<td>The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapting your speed and driving style
The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.⚠️

System limits
Be alert
Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.⚠️

Detection range
The detection capacity of the radar sensor and the collision warning has limitations.
This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.
For example, the following situations may not be detected:
▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.

Functional limitations
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:
▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
▷ In tight curves.
▷ If the radar sensor is dirty or obscured.

Prewarning sensitivity
Depending on the set prewarning time, this may result in increased false warnings.

Collision warning

The concept
If the vehicle does not include Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, the collision warning is controlled via the camera in the base of the interior rearview mirror.
The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h. The time of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

In the process, vehicles in a similar direction of movement are observed if they are located within the detection range of the system.
When the vehicle is intentionally brought into contact with a vehicle, the collision warning is delayed to avoid misleading warnings.

**Warning stages**

**Prewarning**
This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

**Acute warning**
Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

**Switching the warning function on/off**

Press the button

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Setting the warning time**

These settings have no effect on the time of the warning with which Active Cruise Control ACC prompts the driver to intervene or brake.

1. Activate collision warning.
2. Activate the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Display in the instrument cluster**
The collision warning can be issued in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and acoustically.

**Warning stages**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Car" /></td>
<td>The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Increase distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Car" /></td>
<td>The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adapting your speed and driving style**
The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.

**System limits**

**Be alert**
Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.

**Detection range**
The detection capacity of the camera and the collision warning has limitations. This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.
For example, the following situations may not be detected:
Night Vision with pedestrian detection

The concept
Night Vision with pedestrian detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera records the area in front of the vehicle and displays the image on the Control Display.

The picture is a heat image. The system has an integrated pedestrian detection function that detects pedestrians and cyclists. Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

Personal responsibility
Night Vision cannot replace the driver’s personal judgment of the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. The view ahead and the actual visibility conditions must always be the basis on which the vehicle speed is adjusted; otherwise, there is a risk to road safety.

Heat image

The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects, a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

Functional limitations
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the camera view field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- In the case of vehicles with insufficiently visible tail lamps.
- In the case of partially covered vehicles.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Prewarning sensitivity
Depending on the set prewarning time, this may result in increased false warnings.

Camera

The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rear view mirror clean and clear.
For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

**Pedestrian detection**

The pedestrian detection and warning system only operates in darkness and only when a heat image is displayed.

Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

People detected by the system are displayed with a slight yellow hue.

Under good ambient conditions, the pedestrian detection system operates within a range of approx. 50 ft/15 m to approx. 330 ft/100 m.

Environmental influences can limit the availability of pedestrian detection.

If pedestrian detection is not available, a symbol is displayed in the heat image.

This symbol disappears when the function becomes available again.

**Warning of people in danger**

If the system detects a person in a defined area in front of the vehicle and if there is the danger of collision with this person, a warning symbol appears on the Control Display and in the Head-up Display.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

**Warning area in front of the vehicle**

The warning area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas.

- Central area 1 directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area 2 to the right and left.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes longer and wider, for example.

**Prewarning**

The yellow symbol is displayed when a person is detected in the central area,
arrow 1, immediately in front of the vehicle. The yellow symbol is displayed when a person detected in the extended area, arrow 2, is moving from the right or left to the central area.

**Acute warning**

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds. You are requested to intervene immediately by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

**Display in the Head-up Display**

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-Up Display and on the Control Display. The displayed symbol can vary with the people detected. For people located in the central area, the distance to the person is indicated by the size of the symbol.

**System limits**

**Basic limits**

System operation is limited in situations such as the following:

- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera is dirty or the protective glass is damaged.
- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- At very high external temperatures.

**Limits of pedestrian detection**

Animals are not detected by the pedestrian detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

Limited pedestrian detection:

- People who are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- People who are not in an upright position, e.g., lying down.

- Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).
- After physical damage to the system, e.g., after an accident.

**No display on the rear screen**

The image from Night Vision with people detection cannot be displayed on the rear screen.

**Activation/deactivation**

Press the button.

**Display**

Night Vision with pedestrian detection is not available on the rear screen.

**Adjustments via the iDrive**

With Night Vision switched on:

1. Activate Night Vision with pedestrian detection.
2. Press the controller.
3. Open the desired menu item.

- ☀ "Brightness"
- ☀ "Contrast"
- ☢ "Pedestrian detection"

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.
Camera

Rain, dirt, snow, or ice can impair camera operation.

The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

The camera is automatically cleaned together with the headlamps.

Clean the lens, refer to page 220.

Lane departure warning

The concept

Starting at a specific speed, this system alerts you when the vehicle on streets with lane markings is about to leave the lane. Depending on the country-specific version of the vehicle, the speed is between 35 mph/55 km/h and 45 mph/70 km/h. When switching on the system below this speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently in the event of warnings. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Notes

Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the course of the road and the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control of the vehicle.

At a glance

Button in the vehicle

The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rear view mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Press the button

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.
Display in the instrument cluster

▷ Lines: system is activated.
▷ Arrows: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Display in the instrument display

▷ Symbol red: system is activated.
▷ Symbol green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel begins vibrating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning ends:
▷ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
▷ When returning to your own lane.
▷ When braking hard.
▷ When using the turn signal.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:
▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
▷ In the event of worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
▷ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
▷ When driving toward bright lights.
▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Active Blind Spot Detection

The concept

Two radar sensors below the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind on the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing lights up dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The lamp in the housing of the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Notes

Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver’s personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle’s surroundings at all times, otherwise an accident is still possible despite all warnings.
At a glance

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located under the rear bumper.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The system can issue warnings at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display

Information stage

The dimmed lamp in the mirror housing indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Warning

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the lamp in the mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
▷ If the bumper is dirty or iced up, or covered with stickers.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
▷ NBG009014A.

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Brake force display

The concept

▷ During normal brake application, the outer brake lamps light up.
▷ During heavy brake application, the inner brake lamps light up in addition.

Active Protection

The concept

The Active Protection safety package consists of systems that are independent of each other:

▷ PreCrash
▷ PostCrash

PreCrash

The concept

With this system critical driving situations that might result in an accident can be detected above a speed of approx. 19 mph/30 km/h. In these situations, preventative protection measures are automatically undertaken to minimize the risk in the event of an accident as much as possible.

Critical driving situations may include:

▷ Full application of the brakes.
▷ Severe understeering.
▷ Severe oversteering.

If the vehicle includes the collision warning or collision warning with braking feature, impending collisions with vehicles driving ahead or stopped in front of you can also be detected within the system’s range.

⚠️ Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. The system may not always detect critical situations reliably and in a timely manner. Adapt speed to traffic situation and drive alertly; otherwise, a risk to safety may result.

Function

After the safety belt is buckled, the front belts are automatically pretensioned once after the vehicle is driven away.

In critical driving situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

▷ The front belts are automatically pretensioned.
▷ Automatic closing of the windows.
▷ Automatic closing of the glass sunroof.
▷ Automatic Positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.
▷ For vehicles equipped with Comfort Seats in the rear: automatic positioning of the backrests for the rear passenger seats.
After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front belts are loosened again. All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the belt before continuing on your trip.

**PostCrash**

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the car to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision.

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Depressing the accelerator pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.
Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.
The vehicle remains steerable even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.
ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost. It thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.
Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with the Active Cruise Control, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations. Refer also to Collision warning, refer to page 109.

Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving away on gradients. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive away without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.
Depending on the vehicle load or when a trailer is being used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

Driving off without delay
After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin rolling back.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The concept
DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when driving away and accelerating.
DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions, such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Subject to physical limits, DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes at individual wheels.

Adjust your driving style to the situation
An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.
The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC.
Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner.
Indicator/warning lamps

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.
The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in bends.
Stabilizing interventions by the Integral Active Steering system are only performed by the rear axle steering.
To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed.
The DSC system is switched off.

Activating DSC

Press the button.
DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.
The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.
The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.
It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.
You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:
▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
▷ When rocking the vehicle or driving off in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating the Dynamic Traction Control DTC provides maximum traction on loose ground.
Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating DTC

Press the button.
TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.
TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.
The indicator lamp lights up: DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

**xDrive**

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of your vehicle. Concerted action by the xDrive and DSC further optimize traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

**HDC Hill Descent Control**

**The concept**

HDC is a downhill driving assistant that automatically controls vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients. Without applying the brakes, the vehicle moves at slightly more than walking speed.

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving downhill, the vehicle reduces its speed to approx. walking speed and then keeps its speed constant.

As long as there is active braking, the system is on standby. The system does not brake the vehicle during this time.

Use HDC in low gears or in transmission position D or R only.

**Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed**

Specify desired speed in the range from approx. 4 mph/6 km/h to approx. 15 mph/25 km/h using the rocker switch of the cruise control on the steering wheel. Vehicle speed can be changed by lightly accelerating.

- Press up the rocker switch to the point of resistance: the speed increases gradually.
- Press up the rocker switch past the point of resistance: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- Press down the rocker switch to the point of resistance: the speed decreases gradually.
- Press down the rocker switch past the point of resistance: when driving forward, the speed decreases to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h; when reversing, the speed decreases to approx. 4 mph/6 km/h.

**Activating HDC**

Press the button; the LED above the button lights up.

**Deactivating HDC**

Press the button again and the LED goes out. HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 37 mph/60 km/h.
Display in the instrument cluster

The selected speed is displayed in the speedometer.

▷ Green: the system is actively braking the vehicle.
▷ Orange: the system is on standby.

Malfunction

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster. HDC is not available, e.g., due to elevated brake temperatures.

Adaptive Drive

The concept

Adaptive Drive includes the following systems:

▷ Dynamic Drive, refer to page 124
▷ Dynamic Damping Control, refer to page 124

The system increases driving stability and driving comfort.

Dynamic Drive

The concept

Dynamic Drive reduces the lateral inclination of the vehicle that occurs during rapid driving in curves or during quick evasive maneuvers. Driving stability and driving comfort are increased under all driving conditions. The system utilizes active stabilizer bars on the front and rear axles that react immediately to all driving situations.

Programs

The system offers two different programs. The programs can be selected via the Driving Experience Switch, refer to page 126.

SPORT

Sporty tuning for greater driving agility.

COMFORT

Comfort-oriented tuning for optimal comfort.

Dynamic Damping Control

The concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces. The system enhances driving dynamics and comfort as required for the road surface and driving style.

Programs

The system offers three different programs. The programs can be selected via the Driving Experience Switch, refer to page 126.

SPORT

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

COMFORT / ECO PRO

Balanced tuning between the COMFORT+ and SPORT or SPORT+ programs.

COMFORT+

Comfort-oriented tuning of the shock absorbers for optimal traveling comfort.

Integral Active Steering

The concept

Integral Active Steering is a combination of Active Steering and rear axle steering. Active Steering varies the steering angle of the wheels in relation to the steering wheel movement as a function of the speed.
At speeds up to approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, e.g., in curves, the steering angle is increased, i.e., steering becomes more direct.

The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability by turning the rear wheels slightly in a direction opposite to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the steering angle is increasingly reduced.

The rear wheels are turned to the same angle as the front wheels.

In critical situations, Integral Active Steering can specifically steer the front and rear wheels to stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes, e.g., when braking where road conditions differ on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

**Initializing**

In rare cases, it may become necessary to initialize the Integral Active Steering.

The warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

1. With the engine running, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left and right several times in a uniform manner until the warning lamp disappears.
2. Have the system checked if the warning lamp does not go out after moving the steering wheel approx. 6 times or if the steering wheel is at an angle.

**Using snow chains**

Ensure that the rear axle steering is deactivated when using snow chains, refer to page 195.

**Programs**

The system offers two different programs. The programs can be selected via the Driving Experience Switch, refer to page 126.

**SPORT**

Consistently sporty tuning of the Integral Active Steering for greater driving agility.

**COMFORT**

Balanced tuning between the COMFORT+ and SPORT programs.

**COMFORT+**

Consistently comfort-oriented tuning of the Integral Active Steering for optimal traveling comfort.

**Malfunction**

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further, while the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher speed range.

The stability-enhancing intervention may be deactivated.

Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Have the system checked.

**Self-leveling suspension**

**The concept**

The self-leveling suspension keeps the vehicle height and ground clearance constant. The height of the vehicle at the rear axle is maintained at a predefined level under all load conditions.

The system ensures consistent comfort by keeping spring travel constant in all driving situations.

**Malfunction**

A Check Control message is displayed. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit your nearest service center.
Driving Experience Switch

The concept
The Driving Experience Switch can be used to adjust the driving dynamics of the vehicle. For this purpose various programs are available for selection that are activated via the two buttons of the Driving Experience Switch and the DSC OFF-button.

Operating the programs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Press the button</th>
<th>Program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![DSC OFF]</td>
<td>DSC OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![TRACTION]</td>
<td>TRACTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![SPORT+]</td>
<td>SPORT+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![SPORT]</td>
<td>SPORT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![COMFORT]</td>
<td>COMFORT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![COMFORT+]</td>
<td>COMFORT+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![ECO PRO]</td>
<td>ECO PRO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Automatic program change
The system automatically switches to COMFORT in the following situations:

- Failure of Integral Active Steering.
- Failure of Dynamic Damping Control.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

DSC OFF
Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Stabilizing interventions by the Integral Active Steering system are only performed by the rear axle steering.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC OFF
Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed in the tachometer.

The DSC system is switched off.

Deactivating DSC OFF
Press the button.
DSC OFF and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When DSC OFF is activated, DSC OFF is displayed in the tachometer.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC OFF is activated.

TRACTION
Maximum traction on loose road surfaces. DTC Dynamic Traction Control is switched on. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating TRACTION
Press the button.
TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.
The DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

Deactivating TRACTION
Press the button again.
TRACTION and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When TRACTION is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.

The indicator lamp lights up: TRACTION is activated.
**SPORT+**  
Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension with limited driving stabilization. Dynamic Traction Control is switched on. The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

**Activating SPORT+**  
Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the tachometer and the DSC indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

**Indicator/warning lamps**  
SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster. The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

**SPORT**  
Consistently sporty tuning of the suspension for greater driving agility with maximum driving stabilization. The program can be configured to individual specifications. The configuration is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Activating SPORT**  
Press the button repeatedly until SPORT appears in the tachometer.

**Configuring SPORT**  
When the display is activated on the Control Display, refer to page 128, the SPORT driving mode can be set. After the SPORT driving mode is activated, select "Configure SPORT" on the displayed panel and configure the program.

SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"  
2. "SPORT mode" or: "Driving mode"  
3. Configure driving mode.

This configuration is retrieved when the SPORT driving mode is activated.

**COMFORT**  
For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

**Activating COMFORT**  
Press the button repeatedly until the program display in the tachometer goes out.

In certain situations, the system automatically changes to the NORMAL program, automatic program change, refer to page 126.

**COMFORT+**  
Comfort-oriented tuning of the shock absorbers for optimal traveling comfort with maximum driving stabilization.

**Activating COMFORT+**  
Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT+ appears in the tachometer.

**ECO PRO**  
ECO PRO, refer to page 179, provides consistent tuning to minimize fuel consumption for maximum range with maximum driving stabilization. Comfort functions and the engine controller are adjusted. The program can be configured to individual specifications.
Activating ECO PRO
Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO
1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"

Configure driving mode
Settings can be made for the following driving modes in Driving mode:
▷ SPORT mode, refer to page 127.
▷ ECO PRO mode, refer to page 179.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Selected program
The selected program is displayed in the tachometer.

Program selection
Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs.

Display on the Control Display
Program changes can be displayed briefly on the Control Display.
To do so, make the following settings:
1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Driving mode info"
Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC

The concept
This system can be used to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it depends on the speed.

To maintain a certain distance, the system automatically decelerates, applies the brakes lightly, or accelerates again if the vehicle ahead begins moving faster.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits. If the vehicle ahead of your drives away again from a halt, your vehicle is able to accelerate if operated accordingly.

Even if some time passes before the vehicle drives away again, the BMW can still be accelerated automatically and simply.

As soon as the road is clear, it accelerates to the desired speed.

The speed is also maintained on downhill gradients, but may not be maintained on uphill slopes if engine power is insufficient.

General information
When ECO PRO is activated, cruise control is also set to a driving style that saves on fuel consumption.

Notes

⚠️ Personal responsibility

The system does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her speed, distance and driving style to the traffic conditions. You should drive attentively and intervene actively when necessary, e.g. by braking or making an evasive maneuver, otherwise, there is danger of an accident.

At a glance

Buttons on the steering wheel

1  System on/off, interrupt
2  Resume speed
3  Store speed
4  Reduce distance
5  Store, maintain/change speed
6  Increase distance
**Radar sensor**

A dirty or covered sensor may hinder the detection of vehicles.

▷ If necessary, clean the radar sensor. Remove layers of snow and ice carefully.
▷ Do not cover the view field of the radar sensor.

**Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control**

**Switching on**

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

**Switching off**

Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.

If switching off the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button.

▷ If active: press twice.
▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed and distance are deleted.

**Interrupting the system**

When active, press the button.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

▷ When the brakes are applied.
▷ When transmission position D is disengaged.
▷ When DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.
▷ If the safety belt and the driver’s door are opened when the vehicle is standing still.
▷ If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, e.g., on a road with very little traffic without road edge line markings.
▷ If the radar sensor is dirty.

**Maintaining/storing the speed**

Press the button.

Or:

Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.
It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 132.

When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

**Changing, maintaining, and storing the speed**

The rocker switch can be pressed while the system is interrupted to maintain and store the current speed. DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

⚠️ Adapting the desired speed
Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.

⚠️ Speed differences
Large differences in speed relative to vehicles ahead of the vehicle cannot be compensated by the system for example in the following situations:

▷ When catching up rapidly with a truck.
▷ When another vehicle suddenly swerves into the wrong lane.

Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h. Max. adjustable speed: 110 mph/180 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

**Distance**

⚠️ Selecting a distance
Adjust the distance according to the traffic and weather conditions; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. Maintain the prescribed safety distance.

**Reduce distance**

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 132, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Increase distance**

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 132, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Calling up the desired speed and distance**

**While driving**

Press the button with the system switched on.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

▷ When the system is switched off.
▷ When the ignition is switched off.
While standing

Before leaving the vehicle, secure it against rolling.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and apply the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.

The system brought the vehicle to a complete standstill.

 blindly

Green mark in the speedometer during a brief idle phase:

The vehicle ahead of you drives away while the mark is green: your vehicle accelerates without anything having to be done.

Switch to orange of the mark in the speedometer after approx. 2 sec.:

The vehicle ahead of you drives away, while the mark is orange: in order to accelerate, briefly press the gas pedal or press the RES button or SET button.

Rolling bars in the distance indicator mean that the vehicle ahead of you has driven off.

You actively braked your vehicle to a halt by pressing on the brake pedal and it is standing behind another vehicle:

1. Press the button to call up a stored desired speed.
2. Release the brake pedal.
3. Press on the accelerator briefly, or press the RES button or the rocker switch when the vehicle ahead of you drives away.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed

 blindly

The marking lights up green: the system is active.

The marking lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.

 blindly

The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

With instrument display: the symbol is displayed in the speedometer similarly to the mark for the desired speed.

Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements for operation are currently not met.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

The selected distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you is shown.

Distance display

Distance 1

Distance 2

Distance 3

Distance 4

This value is set after the system is switched on.

The system has been interrupted or distance control is deactivated because the accelerator is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.

Distance control is deactivated because the accelerator is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven away.
Indicator/warning lamps

Personal responsibility
The indicator and warning lamps do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her desired driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.

The vehicle symbol lights up orange:
A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

The vehicle symbol flashes orange:
The conditions are not adequate for operating the system.
The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively assume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator.

The vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:
You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Displays in the Head-up Display
The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.
Adjusting the Head-up Display, refer to page 149.

System limits

Speed range
Best results are achieved when using the system on well-developed roads and highways. The desired speed can be selected between 20 mph/30 km/h to 110 mph/180 km/h.
The system can also be activated when stationary.
Comply with the legal speed limit in every situation when using the system.

Detection range

The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.
Two-wheeled vehicles driving ahead of you for instance might not be detected.

Limited detection capacity
Because of the limits to the detection capacity, you should be alert at all times so that you can intervene actively, if necessary; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.

Deceleration
The system does not decelerate when a stationary obstacle is located in the same lane, e.g., a vehicle at a red traffic light or at the end of traffic congestion.
The system also does not respond to:
▷ Pedestrians or similar slow-moving road users.
▷ Red traffic lights.
▷ Stationary objects.
▷ Cross traffic.
▷ Oncoming traffic.

No warnings
A warning may not be issued when approaching a stationary or very slow-moving obstacle. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.
Swerving vehicles

A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

⚠️ Swerving vehicles

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if necessary. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. ◄

Unexpected lane change

If a vehicle ahead of you unexpectedly moves into another lane from behind a stopped vehicle, you yourself must react, as the system does not react to stopped vehicles.

Cornering

If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly in the curve, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves, situations may result due to the restricted detection range of the system in which a vehicle driving ahead of you may not be detected at all, or not until after a considerable delay.

When approaching a curve, the system may react briefly to the vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. Any deceleration of the vehicle by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating. After the accelerator pedal is released, the system becomes active again and independently controls the speed.

Driving away

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive away automatically, e.g., on steep inclines or behind bumps in the road.
Radar sensor

For US owners only
The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
▷ OAYARS3-A

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user’s authority to operate this equipment.

Malfunction
The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred during parking, for example. A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Cruise control

The concept
The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.
It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.
The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking action is insufficient.

Unfavorable conditions
Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, for instance:
▷ On curvy roads.
▷ In heavy traffic.
▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.
Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.

General information
When ECO PRO is activated, cruise control is also set to a driving style that saves on fuel consumption.

Controls

At a glance

Switching on
Press the button on the steering wheel.
The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.
Cruise control can be used.

Switching off
Deactivated or interrupted system
If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.
Press the button.

▷ If active: press twice.
▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

**Interrupting the system**

When active, press the button.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

▷ The brakes are applied.
▷ The transmission position D is disengaged.
▷ DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
▷ DSC is actively controlling stability.
▷ HDC is activated.

**Maintaining/storing the current speed**

Press the button.

Or:

Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster. Displays in the speedometer, refer to page 137.

When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

**Changing/maintaining speed**

The rocker switch can be pressed while the system is interrupted in order to maintain and store the current speed.

⚠️ **Adapting the desired speed**

Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. 

Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Max. adjustable speed: 140 mph/230 km/h.

▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it there accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator. After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.
Resuming the desired speed
Press the button.

The desired speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp
Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

The marking lights up green: the system is active.

The marking lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.

The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

With instrument display: the symbol is displayed in the speedometer similarly to the mark for the desired speed.

Desired speed

General information
Measurements are made by ultrasound sensors in the bumpers.

The range is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

By the front sensors and the two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.

By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Notes
Check the traffic situation as well PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.

Avoid driving quickly with PDC
Avoid approaching an object quickly.

Avoid driving away quickly while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning.

Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements for operation are currently not met.

PDC Park Distance Control

The concept
PDC supports you when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind your vehicle are indicated by:

▷ Signal tones.
▷ Visual display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 902 940 - 07 12 490
At a glance

Button in the vehicle

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically
Select transmission position R with the engine running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.
Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually
Press the button.
▶ On: the LED lights up.
▶ Off: the LED goes out.

In addition to the PDC Park Distance Control, the backup camera, refer to page 141, can be switched on.

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive
With PDC activated:
▶ "Rear view camera"
The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display

Signal tones
When approaching an object, an intermittent tone is sounded that indicates the position of the object. For example, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.
The shorter the distance to the object becomes, the shorter the intervals.
If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 in/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.
The intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:
▶ If the vehicle stops in front of an object that is detected by only one of the corner sensors.
▶ If moving parallel to a wall.
The signal tone is switched off:
▶ When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.
▶ When transmission position P is engaged.

Volume
The volume of the PDC signal can be adjusted, refer to user’s manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Visual warning
The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds.
A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.
The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to PDC:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
2. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**System limits**

**Limits of ultrasonic measurement**
The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, e.g.:
- With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With low objects.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected.

**False warnings**
PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:
- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered in ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- In heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

**Malfunction**
A Check Control message is displayed. The range of the sensors is shown as a shaded area on the Control Display.
PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

To ensure full operability:
- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

**Surround View**

**The concept**
Surround View includes the following systems:
- Backup camera, refer to page 141.
- Side View, refer to page 144.
- Top View, refer to page 139.

It assists the driver when parking, maneuvering and on blind driveways and intersections.

**Top View**

**The concept**
Top View assists you in parking and maneuvering. The area around the doors and the road area around the vehicle are shown on the Control Display for this purpose.

**General information**
The image is captured by two cameras integrated in the exterior mirrors and by the backup camera.
The range is at least 7 ft/2 m to the side and rear. In this way, obstacles up to the height of the exterior mirrors are detected early.
Notes

Check the traffic situation as well
Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the cameras.

At a glance

Button in the vehicle

Press the button.
▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

Top View is displayed, switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 140.

Switching on/off manually

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive

With Top View switched on:

"Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display.

When the distance to an object is small, a red bar is shown in front of the vehicle, as it is in the PDC display.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The Top View and PDC images are displayed if the system is switched on via iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

The lenses of the Top View cameras are located at the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 220.
The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display when reverse gear is selected. To switch to Top View:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
2. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

**Brightness**

With Top View switched on:

1. "Brightness"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

**Contrast**

With Top View switched on:

1. "Contrast"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

**Displaying the turning circle and pathway lines**

The static, red turning circle line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.

The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle.

The pathway line is dependent on the current steering angle and is continuously adjusted with the steering wheel movement.

"Parking aid lines"

Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

**System limits**

Top View cannot be used in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With the tailgate open.
- With an exterior mirror folded in.
- In poor light.

A Check Control message is displayed in some of these situations.

**Backup camera**

**The concept**

The backup camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

**Notes**

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the backup camera.
At a glance

Button in the vehicle

Backup camera

Camera

The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 220.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The backup camera image is displayed if the system was switched on via the iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

Switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 138.

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive

With PDC activated:

R "Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display on the Control Display

Functional requirement

▷ The backup camera is switched on.
▷ The tailgate is fully closed.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

▷ Parking aid lines

P "Parking aid lines"

Pathway and turning circle lines are displayed.

▷ Obstacle marking

R "Obstacle marking"

Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.
Pathway lines

- Can be shown in the backup camera image when in transmission position R.
- Help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.
- Are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines

- Can be shown in the backup camera image.
- Show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.
- Only one turning circle line is displayed when the steering wheel is turned.

Obstacle marking

- Spatially-shaped markings can be shown in the backup camera image.
  Their colored steps match the markings of the PDC. This simplifies estimation of the distance to the object shown.

Parking using pathway and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.

2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.
Display settings

Brightness
With the backup camera switched on:

1. ☀ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast
With the backup camera switched on:

1. ◼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

System limits

Detection of objects
High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the backup camera.

Side View

The concept
Side View provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections. Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver’s seat. To improve visibility, two cameras in the front of the vehicle record the traffic situation on each side.

Notes
The images from both cameras are shown simultaneously on the Control Display.

⚠ Check the traffic situation as well
Check the traffic situation around the vehicle on blind driveways and intersections with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the Side View cameras.

At a glance

Button in the vehicle

Cameras

Two cameras integrated in the bumpers capture the image.
The two camera lenses are located on the sides of the bumper.
The image quality may be impaired by dirt.
Clean the lens, refer to page 220.

Switching on/off

Switching on/off manually

Automatic deactivation during forward travel
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.
Switch the system back on if necessary.

**Display**
The traffic area to the left and right is displayed on the Control Display.

Guidelines at the bottom of the image show the position of the front of the vehicle.

**Brightness**
With the Side View switched on:
1. ☀ "Brightness"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

**Contrast**
With the Side View switched on:
1. ● "Contrast"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

**System limits**
The cameras capture a maximum range of 330 ft/100 m.

---

**Parking assistant**

**The concept**

This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 137.

**Notes**

⚠️ **Personal responsibility**
The parking assistant does not relieve the driver of responsibility for the vehicle during the parking procedure.

Watch the parking space and parking procedure closely and intervene if necessary; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.

⚠️ **Changes to the parking space**
Changes to the parking space after it was measured are not taken into account by the system.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.

⚠️ **Transporting loads**
Loads that extend beyond the perimeter of the vehicle are not taken into account by the system during the parking procedure.
Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.

⚠ Curbs
The parking assistant may steer the vehicle over or onto curbs.
Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, the wheels, tires, or the vehicle may become damaged.

An engine that has been switched off by the Auto Start Stop function is restarted automatically when the parking assistant is activated.

Requirements

For measuring parking spaces
▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.
▷ When parking in parking spaces on the driver’s side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

Suitable parking space
▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
▷ Minimum length of the gap: own vehicle’s length plus approx 4 ft/1.2 m.
▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

For parking procedure
Closed doors.

At a glance

Button in the vehicle

Parking assistant

Ultrasound sensors

The ultrasounds sensors used to measure parking spaces are located in the side turn signals. To ensure full operability:
▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Switching on/off

Switching on with the button

Press the button.
The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
Parking assistant is activated automatically.
**Switching on with reverse gear**

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Activate: "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol in the Control Display.

---

**Switching off**

The system can be deactivated as follows:

▷ Press the button.
▷ Switch off the ignition.

---

**Display on the Control Display**

**Activating/deactivating the system**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The system is activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Without Professional navigation system or TV: system status**

The status is displayed with symbols.

- Gray: parking space search.
- Blue: the system is activated. A suitable parking space was found.

---

**With Professional navigation system or TV: system status**

- Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle representation. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.
- Suitable parking spaces are displayed next to the vehicle symbol at the edge of the road as on the Control Display. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.

---

The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been seized.
The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been seized.

Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forwards slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant

Check the traffic situation as well
Loud sounds outside and within the vehicle can drown out the signal tones of the parking assistant and PDC.

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.

1. Switch on the parking assistant and activate it if necessary.
   The status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
   To achieve the best possible parking position, wait for the automatic steering wheel movement after the gear change when the vehicle is stationary.
   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.

3. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

▶ "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
▶ Press the button.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

▶ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or if he takes over steering.
▶ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the Control Display.
▶ If a turn signal is activated in the opposite direction to the desired side for parking.
▶ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
▶ On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces if necessary.
▶ If doors are open.
▶ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.
▶ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Continuing

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if necessary.
Follow the instructions on the Control Display to do this.

System limits

No parking assistance
The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:
▶ In tight curves.

Functional limitations
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:
▶ When sensors are dirty or iced over.
▶ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
▶ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
When leaves or snow has collected in the parking space.

**Limits of ultrasonic measurement**

The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, e.g. in the following circumstances:

- With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure, such as fences.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected.

The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

**Malfunction**

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

**Head-up Display**

**The concept**

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e.g., the speed.

In this way, the driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

**Display visibility**

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by:

- Certain sitting positions.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, check the basic settings.

**Switching on/off**

Press the button.

**Display**

**Overview**

- Speed.
- Navigation system.
- Check Control messages.
- Collision warning.
- Speed limit detection.
- Cruise control.
- Lane departure warning.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.
Selecting displays in the Head-up Display
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.
The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the brightness
The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient light.
The basic setting can be adjusted manually.
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.
The brightness is adjusted.
When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 99.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting the height
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller.
The height is adjusted.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the rotation
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the controller.
Rotation is set.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Special windshield
The windshield is part of the system.
The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.
A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.
Therefore, have the special windshield replaced by a service center only.
Climate control

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Automatic climate control

1 Air distribution, left
2 Temperature, left
3 AUTO program, left
4 Air flow, AUTO intensity, residual heat, left
5 Remove ice and condensation
6 Maximum cooling
7 Display
8 Air flow, AUTO intensity, right
9 AUTO program, right
10 Temperature, right
11 Air distribution, right
12 Seat heating, right
13 Active seat ventilation, right
14 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
15 Cooling function
16 Rear window defroster
17 ALL program
18 Active seat ventilation, left
19 Seat heating, left
Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Upper body region.
▷ Upper body region and footwell.
▷ Footwell.
▷ Windows and footwell: driver's side only.
▷ Windows, upper body region and footwell: driver's side only.

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensation sensor.

Temperature

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Press the button.

Air flow, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 153, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air flow and air distribution can be adjusted.

Press the left or right side of the button:

decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Air flow, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air flow, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left or right side of the button:

decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Press the button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow can be adjusted when the program is active.

If the windows are fogged over, you can also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Maximum cooling

Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.
Air flows out of the vents for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible:
▷ At an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/0 °C.
▷ When the engine is running.

The air flow can be adjusted when the program is active.

**Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode**

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shutoff automatically.
▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button on the driver’s side to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.

**Continuous recirculated-air mode**

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily.

**Cooling function**

The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 174, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

**Rear window defroster**

Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

**ALL program**

The current settings on the driver’s side for temperature, air flow, air distribution, and AUTO program are transferred to the front passenger side and to the left and right rear.

The program is switched off if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

**Residual heat**

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the interior.

**Functional requirement**

▷ Up to 20 minutes after the engine has been switched off.
▷ Warm engine.
▷ The battery is sufficiently charged.
▷ External temperature below 77 °F/25 °C.

**Switching on**

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Press the right side of the button on the driver’s side.
is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The interior temperature, air volume and air distribution can be adjusted with the ignition switched on.

**Switching off**

At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver’s side.

on the display of the automatic climate control goes out.

**Switching the system on/off**

**Switching off**

- **Complete system:**
  Press and hold the left button on the driver’s side until the control clicks off.

- **On the front passenger side:**
  Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

**Switching on**

Press any button except:
- **ALL program.**
- **Rear window defroster.**
- **Left side of Air volume button.**
- **Seat heating.**
- **Seat ventilation.**

**Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter**

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

This combined filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 203, of your vehicle.

**Ventilation**

**Front ventilation**

- Thumbwheels to vary the temperature, arrow 1.
  - Toward blue: colder.
  - Toward red: warmer.
- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.
- Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 3.

**Ventilation levels**

- **Draft-free ventilation:**
  Thumbwheel, arrow 3, in level ≤ : the air current is fanned out.
- **Maximum air flow:**
  Thumbwheel, arrow 3, in level ≥ : the air is partially fanned out and partially bundled.
  This maximizes the air supply.
- **Direct ventilation:**
  Thumbwheel, arrow 3, in level → : the air is bundled and can be directed to a specific point.

**Adjusting the ventilation**

- **Ventilation for cooling:**
  Adjust the vent to direct the air in your direction, such as if the vehicle interior is hot from the sun.
- **Draft-free ventilation:**
  Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.
Ventilation in rear, center

▷ Thumbwheels to vary the temperature, arrow 1.
   Toward blue: colder.
   Toward red: warmer.
▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.
▷ Thumbwheels for continuous opening and closing of the vents, arrow 3.

Lateral ventilation

Thumbwheel for continuous opening and closing of the vents, arrow.

Rear automatic climate control

At a glance

1  Temperature
2  AUTO program
3  Vent settings
4  Air flow, AUTO intensity
5  Display
6  Maximum cooling
7  Seat heating  55
8  Active seat ventilation  55

Switching the rear automatic climate control on/off
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Rear climate control"
   The rear automatic climate control is not operational if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting or defogging the windows is active.

AUTO program

Press the button.
Air flow, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically:

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the footwell.
The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

**Intensity of the AUTO program**
With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air flow and air distribution can be adjusted.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

**Temperature**

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant. Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

**Manual air distribution**
The air distribution can be adjusted to individual needs.

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Upper body region.
▷ Upper body region and footwell.
▷ Footwell.

**Air flow, manual**
To be able to manually adjust the air flow, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

**Switching the system on/off**

**Switching off**

Press and hold the left button.

**Switching on**

Press any button except:

▷ Left side of Air volume button.
▷ Seat heating.
▷ Seat ventilation.

**Maximum cooling**

Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Air flows out of the vents for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible:

▷ At an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/0 °C.
▷ When the engine is running.

**Parked-car ventilation**

**The concept**
The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if necessary. The system can be switched on and off directly or by using two preset switch-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes. Operation can be performed via iDrive.

**Parked-car ventilation**
Using the preset switch-on time or when operated directly: any external temperature.
Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

**Switching on/off directly**
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"

![Climate control settings](image)

フルコードション on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

**Preselecting the switch-on time**
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

**Activating the switch-on time**
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"

フルコードション The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.

フルコードション The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to reactivated.
Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated universal remote control

The concept
The integrated universal remote control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

During programming
During programming and before activating a device using the integrated universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects in the range of movement of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Compatibility
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have any questions, please contact:
▷ Your service center.
▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Controls on the interior rearview mirror

- LED, arrow 1.
- Buttons, arrow 2.
- The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:
   Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.
3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.

5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. When the LED is flashing faster, this indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual of the system being set up for information on how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this work step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. When the LED is flashing faster, this indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system
can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror. If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

**Controls**

**Before operation**

Before operating a system using the integrated universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects within the range of movement of the remote-controlled system; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

**Deleting stored functions**

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

---

**Ashtray/cigarette lighter**

**Front**

**Opening**

Press on the cover.

**Emptying**

Take out the insert.

**Lighter**

Push in the lighter. The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

**Danger of burns**

Only hold the hot lighter by its knob; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned. Switch off the ignition and take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves.
Rear

Opening

Press on the cover.

Emptying

Take out the insert.

Connecting electrical devices

Note

⚠️ Do not plug the charger into the socket
Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed sockets in the vehicle. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.

Sockets

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Front center console

Press on the cover.
Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the front passenger footwell

Socket is located below the glove compartment.
To access the socket: fold open the cover.

Rear center console

Remove cover.
In the cargo area

To access the socket: fold open the cover.

USB interface for data transfer

With Professional navigation system or TV: at a glance

The USB interface is located in the center armrest.

Without Professional navigation system or TV: at a glance

The USB interface is located in the glove compartment.

General information

Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:
▷ Personal Profile settings.
▷ Music collection, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Notes

Observe the following when connecting:
▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.
▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.
▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Cargo area

Cargo cover

Note

⚠️ Do not deposit heavy objects

Do not deposit heavy or hard objects on the trunk cover. Otherwise, they could endanger occupants during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example.
Removing
The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.

1. Place your hands into the two recessed grips on the bottom of the cover.
2. Push up the cover.
The cover can be stowed in the rear cargo area floor compartment, refer to page 169.

Installing
1. Insert the cargo cover into the two front retaining pins.
2. Fold down the cover until it engages.

Through-loading system

General information
The cargo area can be expanded by folding down the cargo partition and the rear seat backrest.
The cargo partition and the rear backrest are subdivided at a ratio of 40–20–40. You can also fold down the left and right sides separately.

Foldable rear backrests, manual

Pull the lever. The backrest folds forward.
Fold the backrest back; the backrest engages in an upright position. Pull the lever again to adjust the backrest to the desired angle.

Locking the backrests
Before letting passengers ride in the rear, engage the seat backrests, locking them in place. Otherwise, there is the danger of an accident due to unexpected seat movement.
Foldable rear backrests, powered

At a glance

1. Fold backrest forward
2. Loading position
3. Basic position

Fold backrest forward

⚠ Move the front seats to an upright position. Before folding down the rear backrests, ensure that the front seats are moved forward slightly and are in an upright position. Otherwise, the head restraint and screen could be damaged. ◄

Press the button until the backrest is folded all the way forward.

Folding the backrest back

Before anyone can be transported in the rear:

1. Put the rear seat backrests into their standard position.
2. For the best possible individual seat position, adjust the inclination of the rear seat backrest if necessary.

⚠ Adjust the standard position of the rear seat backrest

Before transporting passengers in the rear and adjusting the rear seat backrest, set the rear seat backrest to its basic position. Otherwise, the rear seats may not effectively restrain passengers in an accident if the backrests are not adequately inclined. ◄

Loading position

Press the button. The seat moves forward and the backrest moves to the basic position. Comfortable seating is still possible although knee clearance is reduced.

Basic position

Press and hold the button until the seat stops automatically in its basic position.

Operation of the rear backrest was deactivated

After a brief period, operation of the rear backrest is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate operation:

▷ Open or close a door or the tailgate.
▷ Press a button on the remote control.
▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

Folding down the cargo partition

⚠ Danger of pinching

Before folding down the trunk partition, ensure that the area of movement of the partition is clear. In particular, ensure that no one is located in the area of movement and that no one reaches into the area of movement of the trunk partition when the middle section is folded down. Otherwise, injury or damage may result. ◄

1. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.
2. To release the cargo partition, pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area. The cargo partition folds forward.
Unlatching center cargo partition

Press the opener toward the left.

Closing the cargo partition
Fold back and engage the cargo partition.

⚠️ Danger of pinching
Before closing the trunk partition, make sure that the closing path is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.

⚠️ Ensure that the lock is securely engaged
Make sure that the lock engages properly when folding back, otherwise transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.

Loading position

Upright position
To expand the cargo area, the cargo partition can be moved into a vertical position.

1. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.
   Through-loading system, refer to page 163

2. To release the cargo partition, pull both levers in the cargo area. The cargo partition folds into an upright position and rests against the rear backrest.

Repositioning
Fold back and engage the cargo partition.

Ski and snowboard bag

General information
The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.
Follow the installation and operation instructions included in the protective jacket.
Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Notes

⚠️ No loose objects in the passenger compartment

Do not stow any objects in the passenger compartment without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants for instance during braking and avoidance maneuvers.

⚠️ Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard. The mat materials could damage the dashboard.

Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

▷ Glove compartment on the driver's and front passenger side, refer to page 166.
▷ Storage compartment in the center console, refer to page 168.
▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest, refer to page 167, in the front and rear.
▷ Compartments in the doors.
▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.
▷ Net in the front passenger footwell.

Glove compartment

Front passenger side

Opening

Pull the handle.
The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.

Closing

Fold up the cover.

Driver's side

Opening

Pull the handle.
Close the glove compartment again immediately
Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.

Closing
Fold up the cover.

**Center armrest**

**Front**
A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the front seats.

**Opening**
Press the buttons next to the lock.

**Locking the storage compartment**
The storage compartment in the armrest can be locked with an integrated key to separately secure the tailgate, refer to page 41, for example.

After the storage compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed out without the integrated key, refer to page 30, for instance at a hotel. This prevents access to the storage compartment and to the cargo area.

**Connection for an external audio device**
For a description, see the user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

**Rear**
A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

**Folding down**
Pull on the opener and fold the armrest forward.

**Opening**
Storage compartment in the rear center armrest.
Storage compartment in the center console

To open: press the button.

Cupholders

Notes

⚠️ Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks
Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident. ●

⚠️ Unsuitable containers
Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage. ●

Clothes hooks

The clothes hooks are located next to the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

⚠️ Do not obstruct view
When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. ●

⚠️ No heavy objects
Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers. ●
Storage compartments in the cargo area

Retaining straps
Retaining straps on the left and right side trim for fastening small objects.

Multi-function hook
There are two multi-function hooks on the cargo area walls.

1. Open the holder by pressing on the button.

2. Press the bag handle into the holder from above.

Light and suitable objects only
Only hang light bags or suitable objects from the holders. Otherwise, there is a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers.

Only transport heavy luggage in the trunk if it has been appropriately secured.

Storage compartments in the floor

Rear compartment
The cargo cover, refer to page 162, can be stowed in the rear compartment.

To open the cover, pull upward on the handle, arrow 1.

To close the cover, press downward until it locks.

You can fix the cover in an upright position, if needed. To do so, unhook the right-hand retaining strap and hook it into the rear of the cover.

Do not stow heavy objects
Only stow light objects in the rear compartment; otherwise, damage may occur.

Front compartment
To open, reach into the recess and raise the handle, arrow 2.

The cover can be completely removed.

Lashing eyes
To secure the cargo, refer to page 176, there are lashing eyes in the cargo area.
Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.
Things to remember when driving

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Breaking-in period
General information
Moving parts need to be broken in to adjust to each other.
The following instructions will help achieve a long vehicle life and good economy.

Engine and differential
Always obey the official speed limit.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km
Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:
▷ For gasoline engine, 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.
Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission’s kickdown mode for the initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km
The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires
Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system
Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and discs. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement
The same breaking in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle’s operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate
⚠ Drive with the tailgate closed
Only drive with the tailgate closed; otherwise, in the event of an accident or braking or evasive maneuvers, passengers or other road users may be injured or the vehicle may be damaged. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the passenger compartment.

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:
▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
▷ Greatly increase the blower speed.
▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system
⚠ Hot exhaust system
High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.
Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.

**Climate control windshield**

The marked area is not covered with heat reflective coating.

Use this area for garage door openers, devices for electronic toll collection, etc.

**Climate control laminated tinted safety glass**

The vehicle glass provides full protection against the harmful effects of UV radiation on the skin.

**Mobile communication devices in the vehicle**

It is advised that you do not use mobile communication devices, e.g., mobile phones, inside the vehicle without connecting them directly to the external antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be discharged from the vehicle interior.

**Hydroplaning**

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning.

**Driving through water**

Drive though calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 6 mph/10 km/h.

Adhere to water depth and speed limitations

Do not exceed this water depth and walking speed; otherwise, the vehicle’s engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.

**Braking safely**

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations when this is necessary.

The vehicle maintains steering responsiveness. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.
Objects in the area around the pedals

- No objects in the area around the pedals.
- Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving.
- Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.
- Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.
- Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.

Driving in wet conditions

- When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles.
- Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.
- The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.
- In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

- Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat, resulting in a reduction in the brake system efficiency.
- You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down in the manual mode of the automatic transmission.
- Avoid load on the brakes
- Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.

Brake disc corrosion

- Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:
  - Low mileage.
  - Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
  - Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.
- Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

- When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops that exits underneath the vehicle.
- Therefore, traces of condensed water under the vehicle are normal.

Do not drive in neutral

- Do not drive in neutral or with the engine stopped, as doing so disables engine braking. In addition, steering and brake assist is unavailable with the engine stopped.
Loading

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

⚠️ Overloading the vehicle
To avoid exceeding the approved carrying capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure.

⚠️ No fluids in the trunk
Make sure that fluids do not leak into the trunk; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.

Determining the load limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle’s placard:
   ▶ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Load

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.
The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.
Stowing cargo

▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the cargo partition.
▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests, including the cargo partition, to stow cargo.
▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
▷ Place protective material around any sharp-edged or pointed objects that could bump against the rear window while the vehicle is in motion.

Securing cargo

▷ Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
▷ Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.

Cargo straps, cargo netting, retaining straps or draw straps on the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Securing cargo

Always position and secure the cargo as described above; otherwise, it can endanger the car’s occupants if sudden braking or swerving becomes necessary.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car; otherwise, they could be thrown around as a result of hard braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

Note

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Roof drip rail with flaps

To secure the cargo, there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

The anchorage points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.
Fold the cover outward.

**Loading**
Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not be too large in area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.
Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information
Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.
Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.
The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo
Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use
Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.
Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof
Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly
Check and, if necessary, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.
Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without delay
Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.
This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.
Driving smoothly and looking ahead reduces fuel consumption.

Use coasting conditions
When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.
On a downhill gradient, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.
The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

**Switch off the engine during longer stops**

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

**Auto Start/Stop function**

The Auto Start/Stop function of your vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

Using this system can cause certain components of the vehicle to become worn prematurely.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

**Switch off any functions that are not currently needed**

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

**Have maintenance carried out**

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle economy and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 203.

**ECO PRO**

**The concept**

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort functions, e.g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

The extension of the range that is achieved as a result can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

**At a glance**

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range, refer to page 180
- ECO PRO tips driving instruction, refer to page 180
- ECO PRO climate control, refer to page 180

**Activating ECO PRO**

Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Configuring ECO PRO**

**Via the Driving Experience Switch**

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"
3. Configure the program.
Via the iDrive
1. "Settings"
2. "ECO PRO mode"
Or
1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure ECO PRO"
Configure the program.

ECO PRO Tip
▷ "ECO PRO limit:":
   Set ECO Pro speed at which an ECO PRO Tip is to be displayed.
▷ "ECO PRO speed warning":
   A reminder is displayed if the set ECO PRO speed is exceeded.

ECO PRO climate control
"ECO PRO climate control"
The climate control is adjusted to be fuel-efficient.
By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the passenger compartment fuel consumption can be economized.
The outputs of the seat heater and the exterior mirror heating are also reduced.

ECO PRO potential
The percentage of potential savings that can be achieved with the current configuration is displayed.

Display in the instrument cluster
Display in the instrument display
When ECO PRO mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.
Some of the displays may differ from the display in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO bonus range
An extension of the range can be achieved by an adjusted driving style.
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.
The bonus range is shown in the range display.
The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Driving style
In the tachometer, a mark in the bar display indicates the current efficiency of the driving style corresponding to the accelerator pedal position.
▷ Blue display: efficient driving style as long as the mark moves within the blue range.
▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e.g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.
The display switches to blue as soon as all conditions for fuel-economy-optimized driving are met.

ECO PRO Tip - driving instruction
The arrow indicates that the driving style can be adjusted to be more fuel efficient by backing off the accelerator for instance.

ECO PRO tip - Symbols
An additional symbol and a text instruction are displayed.
For efficient driving style, back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions.

Reduce speed to the selected ECO PRO speed.

Manual shift transmission: follow shifting instructions.

Manual shift transmission: engage neutral for engine stop.

**Indications on the Control Display**

**EfficientDynamics**
Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed during driving.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "EfficientDynamics"

**Displaying fuel consumption history**
The average fuel consumption can be displayed within an adjustable time frame.

"Consumption history"

**Adjusting fuel consumption history time frame**
Select the symbol.

**Resetting fuel consumption history**
1. Open "Options".
2. "Reset consumption history"

**Displaying EfficientDynamics info**
The current efficiency can be displayed.

**Display ECO PRO tips**
The driving instruction for decelerating in advance and an additional symbol show the upcoming route section.
The setting is stored for the profile currently in use.
Mobility

To ensure that you remain mobile at all times, this chapter supplies you with important information on the topics of fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance, and Roadside Assistance.
Refueling

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

⚠️ Refuel promptly
Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km, or operation of the engine is not ensured and damage may occur. ◄

Fuel cap

Opening
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.

Closing
1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

⚠️ Do not pinch the retaining strap
Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape.
A message is displayed if the cap is loose or missing. ◄

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap
In the event of an electrical malfunction, for example.
1. Open the cover on the right side trim.

2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This releases the fuel filler flap.

**Observe the following when refueling**

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

- **Do not overfill the fuel tank**
  - Do not overfill the fuel tank; otherwise fuel may escape, causing harm to the environment and damaging the vehicle.

- **Handling fuels**
  - Obey safety regulations posted at the gas station.
Fuel

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Fuel quality

Gasoline
For the best fuel economy, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump containing metal must not be used.

⚠️ Refuel only with unleaded gasoline without metallic additives.

Do not refuel with any leaded gasoline or gasoline with metallic additives, e. g. manganese or iron, or permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components.⚠️

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i. e., E10, may be used for refueling.
Ethanol should satisfy the following quality standards:
US: ASTM 4806–xx
CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx
xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

⚠️ Do not refuel with ethanol E85

Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system.⚠️

The engine is knock controlled. Therefore, you can refuel with different gasoline qualities.

Recommended fuel quality
BMW recommends AKI 91.

Minimum fuel grade
BMW recommends AKI 89.

⚠️ Minimum fuel grade

Do not use any gasoline below the minimum fuel grade as this may impair engine performance.⚠️

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

⚠️ Minimum fuel grade

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from BP or Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.⚠️

BMW recommends BP fuels ♂️
Wheels and tires

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Tire inflation pressure

Safety information
The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:
▷ The service life of the tires.
▷ Road safety.
▷ Driving comfort.

Checking the pressure
Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When the tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

⚠ Check the tire inflation pressure regularly
Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure:
▷ Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
▷ Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Pressure specifications
The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 188, contains all pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:
▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 188, and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

⚠ Maximum permissible speed
Do not exceed 100 mph/160 km/h; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result.
## Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

### 535i, 550i

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.2 / 32 2.4 / 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35 2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.2 / 32 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>3.0 / 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M</td>
<td>Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 535i xDrive, 550Li xDrive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.2 / 32 2.4 / 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35 2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.8 / 41 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>3.0 / 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M</td>
<td>Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

⚠ Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

535i, 550i

Without high-speed tuning feature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.3 / 33 2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.7 / 39 3.2 / 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.3 / 33 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>- 2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>- 2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With high-speed tuning feature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC</td>
<td>2.3 / 33 2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.7 / 39 3.2 / 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>- 2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>- 2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Wheels and tires

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 / 42 - 3.3 / 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC</td>
<td>2.8 / 41 - 3.0 / 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Compact wheel:
T 135/80 R 18 104 M

- Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h
- 4.2 / 60

---

**535i xDrive, 550Li xDrive**

**Without high-speed tuning feature**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35 - 2.4 / 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 - 3.0 / 44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.3 / 33 2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 2.9 / 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**With high-speed tuning feature**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 - 2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 - 2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>245/50 R 18 100 H M +S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 3.2 / 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 - 2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 - 2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36 - 2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Front:
245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC

#### Back:
275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC
Tire size
Pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Front:
245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC
3.0 / 44 -
- 3.2 / 46
Back:
275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC
Compact wheel:
T 135/80 R 18 104 M
Speed up to a max. of
50 mph / 80 km/h
4.2 / 60

Tire identification marks

Tire size
245/45 R 18 96 Y
245: nominal width in mm
45: aspect ratio in %
R: radial tire code
18: rim diameter in inches
96: load rating, not for ZR tires
Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter
T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h
H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h
V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h
W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h
Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number
DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3510
xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand
xxx: tire size and tire design
3510: tire age
Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age
DOT ... 3510: the tire was manufactured in the 35th week in 2010.

Recommendation
Regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading
Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.
For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades
Treadwear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C
All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfa-
ces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

**Temperature**

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠️ Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed. ▶

**RSC – Run-flat tires**

Run-flat tires, refer to page 194, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

**M+S**

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

---

**Tire tread**

**Summer tires**

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

**Winter tires**

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

**Minimum tread depth**

Wear indicators are distributed around the tire’s circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

---

**Tire damage**

**General information**

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

**Notes**

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning.
between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

▷ Unusual vibrations during driving.
▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e.g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

⚠️ In case of tire damage
If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the next service center or tire shop.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.

Otherwise, tire damage can be life-threatening for vehicle occupants and other traffic participants.

⚠️ Repair of tire damage
For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting

⚠️ Information on mounting tires
Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center or tire specialist.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Wheel and tire combination

Information on the correct wheel-tire combination and rim versions for your vehicle can be obtained from your service center.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

Using a tire size other than the size originally fitted can significantly affect fuel consumption.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

⚠️ Approved wheels and tires
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved for your particular vehicle model.

For example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.
With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

**New tires**
Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.
Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

**Retreaded tires**
The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

⚠️ Retreaded tires
Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety.

**Winter tires**
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F/+7 °C.
Although so-called all-season M+S tires do provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

**Maximum speed of winter tires**
If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then display a corresponding sign in the field of vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.

⚠️ Maximum speed for winter tires
Do not exceed the maximum speed for the winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur.

---

**Run-flat tires**
If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

**Rotating wheels between axles**
The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles.
This can impair the handling characteristics.

**Storage**
Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.
Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.
Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

**Run-flat tires**

**Label**

RSC label on the tire sidewall.
The wheels are composed of special rims and tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree.
The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a pressure loss.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 109.
Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 106.

**Changing run-flat tires**
For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

**Snow chains**

**Fine-link snow chains**
Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle, classified as road-safe and recommended. Consult your service center for more information.

**Use**
Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:
- 245/50 R 18.
- 245/45 R 19.

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.
Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.
Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.
When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if necessary.

**Maximum speed with snow chains**
Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

**Snow chain detection**

**The concept**
When using snow chains, you should set whether you are driving with or without snow chains via the iDrive.
The snow chain detection system supports you by automatically showing the detected state on the Control Display.
When snow chains are in use, the rear axle steering of the Integral Active Steering is deactivated automatically.
At speeds above the maximum permitted speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h, the rear axle steering is activated again automatically.

**Activating the status**
1. "Settings"
2. "Tire chains"
3. "Tire chains installed"

**Automatic detection**
If functioning properly:
- Snow chains are mounted. The setting is not activated ✗.
  After you drive a short distance, a Check Control message is shown and the state is activated automatically.
  Confirm the automatic activation.
- Snow chains are not mounted. The setting is activated ✔.
  At speeds above 30 mph/50 km/h, a Check Control message is displayed. Deactivate the status manually.

If not functioning properly:
- Snow chains are mounted. The setting is not activated ✗.
  A Check Control message is not displayed. The automatic detection system is malfunctioning. Activate the status manually.
Activating/deactivating rear axle steering

If the status indicating that snow chains are in use is activated, the rear axle steering is deactivated automatically.

At speeds above 30 mph/50 km/h, the rear axle steering is activated again, even though snow chains are in use.
Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Important features in the engine compartment

1. Vehicle identification number
2. Jump-starting, negative terminal
3. Washer fluid reservoir
4. Jump-starting, positive terminal
5. Oil filler neck.
6. Coolant reservoir

Hood

Opening the hood

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.
Never reach into the engine compartment. Never reach into the intermediate spaces or gaps in the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is risk of injury, e.g. from rotating or hot parts. ◄

1. Pull the lever.

2. Press the release handle and open the hood.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing the hood

Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully. The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely. ◄

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◄

Danger of injury when the hood is open

There is a danger of injury from protruding parts when the hood is open. ◄
Engine oil

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information
Engine oil consumption depends on driving style and driving conditions, e.g., if your driving style is very sporty engine oil consumption will be considerably greater. Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

Check oil level with dipstick
The concept
The minimum oil level is electronically monitored.
If the oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Checking the oil level
1. Park vehicle on a level service with engine at operating temperature after driving at least 6 miles/10 km
2. Switch the engine off.
3. After approx. 5 minutes, remove the dip stick and wipe with a lint-free cloth, paper towel or similar.
4. Carefully insert the dipstick up to the stop in the measuring tube, and pull it back out. The oil level must be between the two marks of the dipstick. The quantity of oil between the two marks of the dipstick is approx. 1 US quart/liter.

Low oil level message
The yellow warning lamp lights up. Engine oil level is below the minimum. Add 1 US quart/liter at the next opportunity.

Checking the oil level electronically
Status display
The concept
The oil level is monitored electronically during driving and shown on the Control Display. If the oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.
Requirements
Depending on the previous displays, the status display appears when the engine is running or after the vehicle has been driven for at least 30 minutes.

Displaying the oil level
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Oil level display messages
Different messages appear on the display depending on the oil level. Pay attention to these messages.
If oil level is too low, immediately add 1 US quart/liter of oil.
Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Too much engine oil
Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus oil can lead to engine damage.

Detailed measurement

The concept
In the detailed measurement the oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.
During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

General information
A detailed measurement is only possible with certain engines.

Requirements
▶ Automatic transmission: selector lever in transmission position N or P and accelerator not depressed.
▶ Vehicle is on a level road and the engine is running at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement
In order to perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"
The oil level is checked and displayed via a scale. Duration: approx. 1 minute.

Adding engine oil

Filler neck

When the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster, add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Protect children
Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and heed the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.

Oil types for refilling

Notes
▶ No oil additives
Oil additives may lead to engine damage.
Viscosity grades for engine oils

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to one of the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, and SAE 5W-30 or malfunctions or engine damage may occur.

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Some types of oils in some cases are not available in all countries.

Approved oil types

Gasoline engine

BMW High Performance SAE 5W-30

BMW Longlife-01

BMW Longlife-01 FE

Additional information about the approved types of oils can be requested from the service center.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an oil with the following specification can be added:

Gasoline engine

API SM or superior grade specification

Oil change

An oil change should be carried out by your service center only.
Coolant

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Danger of burns from hot engine
Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns.

Suitable additives
Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health.

Coolant consists of water and additives. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your vehicle. Ask your service center for suitable additives.

Coolant level
If there is no Min and Max mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir, have the coolant level checked if necessary by your service center and add coolant as needed.

Checking
1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the cap of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, and then open it.
3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.
4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.
Maintenance

Vehicle equipment
All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System
The maintenance system directs you to required maintenance measures and thereby supports you in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS
Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirements. The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance you need to your user profile.
Details on the service requirements, refer to page 88, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control
Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.
Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control that you used most recently.

Storage periods
Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.
If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models
Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements. Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

Position

There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle emissions.

Emissions

▷ The warning lamp lights up:
  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
  Canadian model: warning light indicates the engine symbol.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:
  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Fuel cap

The indicator lamp lights up.
  If the fuel cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapor is escaping. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out in a short time.

Data memory

Your vehicle records data relating to vehicle operation, faults and user settings. These data are stored in the remote control and can be read out with suitable devices, particularly when the vehicle is serviced. The data obtained in this way provide valuable information for service processes and repair or for optimizing and developing vehicle functions further.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

▷ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
▷ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.
Replacing components

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Onboard vehicle tool kit

The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the rear compartment in the cargo area, refer to page 169.

Wiper blade replacement

General information

Do not fold down the wipers without wiper blades

Do not fold down the wipers if wiper blades have not been installed; this may damage the windshield.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 76, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up the wipers.
3. Position the wiper blade in a horizontal position.
4. Remove the wiper blade toward one side.

Lamp and bulb replacement

Notes

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to the service center if you are unfamiliar with them or they are not described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at the service center.
**Danger of burns**
Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.

**Working on the lighting system**
When working on the lighting system, you should always switch off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.

**Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps**
Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.

**Do not touch the bulbs**
Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb’s surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

**Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)**
Light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover serve as the light source for controls, display elements and other equipment.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

**Do not remove the covers**
Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result.

---

**Headlamp glass**
Condensation can form on the inside of the external lamps in cool or humid weather. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlamp glasses do not need to be changed.

If the headlamps do not dim despite driving with the light switched on, increasing humidity forms, e.g. water droplets in the light, have the service center check this.

**Front lamps, bulb replacement**

**At a glance**

**Xenon headlamps**

1. Corner-illuminating lamps
2. Parking lamp, daytime running lights
3. Low beams/high beams
4. Turn signal

**Notes**
Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lamps on and off frequently shortens their life.

If a xenon bulb fails, switch on the front fog lamps and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.
Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.

Parking lamps and roadside parking lamps, turn signal lamp

Follow the general instructions on Lamps and bulbs, refer to page 206.

These lights feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Corner-illuminating lamps

Follow the general instructions on Lamps and bulbs, refer to page 206.

The illustration shows the left side of the engine compartment.

Front fog lamps

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 206.
35-watt bulb, H8

1. Carefully pull out the grill toward the front.

2. Remove the screws.

3. Pull the lamp out toward the front.

4. Remove the bulb and replace it.

5. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

**Tail lamps, bulb replacement**

**At a glance**

1. Turn signal
2. Tail lamp
3. Inside brake lamp
4. Reversing lamp
5. Outside brake lamp

**Turn signal, brake, tail, and license plate lamps**

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 206.

These lights feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

**Lamps in the tailgate**

Follow the general instructions on Lamps and bulbs, refer to page 206.

**Access to the lamps**

1. Remove the four screws using the screw driver from the onboard vehicle tool kit.

2. Pull down the cover with a firm tug.
3. Pull off the connector toward the left.

4. Replace the bulb.

Inside brake lamp
To change the brake lamp, contact your service center.

Reversing lamp
16-watt bulb, W16W.

Turn the bulb, pull it out, and replace it.

Changing wheels

Notes
The vehicle equipment does not include a spare tire.

When using run-flat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.
The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack

The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located in the positions shown.

Vehicle battery

Maintenance
The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.
Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

Battery replacement

Use approved vehicle batteries only
Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center.
to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available and that any Check Control messages are no longer displayed.

**Charging the battery**

**Note**

⚠️ Do not plug the charger into the socket. Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed sockets in the vehicle. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.

**Starting aid terminals**

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 214, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

**Power failure**

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be reinitialized.

Individual settings need to be reprogrammed:

▷ Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory: store the positions again.

▷ Time: update.

▷ Date: update.

▷ Radio station: save again.

▷ Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.

**Disposing of old batteries**

⚠️ Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

---

**Fuses**

**Notes**

⚠️ Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the cargo area.

**In the glove compartment**

Push the handle up, arrow 1, and open the lid, arrow 2.

**In the cargo area**

Open the cover on the right side trim.

Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.
Breakdown assistance

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Emergency Request

Requirements

▷ Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone.
   An Emergency Request can be made, even if no mobile phones are paired with the vehicle.
▷ BMW Assist is activated.
▷ The radio ready state is switched on.
▷ The BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network supported by BMW Assist.
▷ The Assist system is functional.
Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Emergency Request not guaranteed

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Service contract

▷ After your contract with BMW Assist has expired, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by the service center without you having to visit a workshop.
   After deactivation, an Emergency Request is no longer possible.
▷ Under certain circumstances, the system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Initiating an Emergency Request

1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.
   The LED lights up: an Emergency Request was initiated.
   If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
▷ The LED flashes if the connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established.
   After the Emergency Request arrives at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW
Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of the vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard on the hands-free system, the hands-free system may be malfunctioning. However, the BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located on the left in the cargo area.
Release the Velcro® fastener to remove it.

First aid kit

Storage

The first aid kit is generally located in a storage compartment on the right side in the cargo area.
To remove it, raise the cover by the corner, see arrow.

If your vehicle is equipped with Integral Active Steering, the first aid kit is located in a storage compartment under the cargo area floor.
To take it out, lift the cover.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.
Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.
Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance phone number can be viewed on the iDrive or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly. Phone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Jump-starting

Notes

If the battery is discharged, an engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

⚠ Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

⚠ Bodywork contact between vehicles

Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.

Starting aid terminals

⚠ Connecting order

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order; otherwise, there is the danger of injury from sparking.

Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the cap of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of of the vehicle to be started.
Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle being started in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Transporting your vehicle

Note
Your vehicle is not permitted to be towed. Therefore, contact a service center in the event of a breakdown.

Do not have the vehicle towed
Have your vehicle transported on a loading platform only; otherwise, damage may occur.

Tow truck

Do not lift the vehicle
Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.

Note
Do not tow-start the vehicle.
Due to the automatic transmission, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.
Have the cause of the starting difficulties remedied.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Light towing vehicle
The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle response.

Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly
Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage.

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing
a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

**Towing methods when towing other vehicles**

**Tow bar**
The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:
- Maneuvering capability is limited during cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

**Tow rope**
When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut. To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

**Attaching the tow rope correctly**
Only secure the tow rope on the tow fitting; otherwise, damage can occur when it is secured on other parts of the vehicle.

**Tow fitting**
The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW. It is located in the onboard vehicle tool kit under the cargo area floor.

**Tow fitting, information on use**
- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Use the tow fitting screwed in at the front for maneuvering the vehicle only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.

**Screw thread**

Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.
Care

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Car washes

Notes

Steam jets or high-pressure washers
When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/60 °C.

Ensure that a distance of at least 31.5 inches/50 cm is maintained at all times. Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer. ◄

Cleaning sensors/cameras with high-pressure washers
When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the exterior sensors and cameras, e.g., Park Distance Control, for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm. ◄

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter.

Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Automatic car washes

Notes

Note the following:

▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.

▷ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.

▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.

▷ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 76, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.

▷ In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 44.

Guide rails in car washes

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged. ◄

Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

1. Release parking brake, refer to page 71, and deactivate Automatic Hold, refer to page 73.

2. Drive into the car wash.

3. Depress the brake pedal as needed.

4. Engage transmission position N.

5. Switch the engine off. In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.
Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in transmission position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Transmission position
Transmission position P is engaged automatically:
▷ When the ignition is switched off.
▷ After approx. 15 minutes.

Headlamps
▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or caustic cleansers.
▷ Soak areas that have been soiled e.g. due to insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
▷ Thaw ice with deicing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle
After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Remove all residue completely from the windshields, otherwise streaking may cause loss of visibility and wiper noise when the windshield wipers are operated.

Vehicle care

Car care products
BMW recommends using cleaning and care products from BMW, since these have been tested and approved.

Car care and cleaning products
Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health.

Vehicle paint
Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Leather care
Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Upholstery material care
Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.
If they are very dirty, e.g., beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

⚠️ Damage from Velcro® fasteners
Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

### Caring for special components

#### Light-alloy wheels
Use wheel cleaner, particularly during the winter months. Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline or abrasive cleaners, or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C; follow the manufacturer's instructions.

#### Chrome surfaces
Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

#### Rubber components
Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleaners.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or reduced noise damping.

#### Fine wood parts
Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

#### Plastic components
These include:
- ✔️ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ✔️ Headliner.
- ✔️ Lamp lenses.
- ✔️ Instrument cluster cover.
- ✔️ Matte black spray-coated components.
- ✔️ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Lightly dampen the cloth with water.

Do not soak the headliner.

⚠️ Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents
Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage.

#### Safety belts
Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

⚠️ Chemical cleaning
Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing.

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

#### Carpets and floor mats

⚠️ No objects in the area around the pedals
Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving.

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.

Floor mats can be removed from the passenger compartment for cleaning.
If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

**Sensors/cameras**
To clean sensors and cameras, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

**Displays/screens**
Clean the displays with an antistatic microfiber cloth.

⚠️ **Cleaning displays**
- Do not use chemical or household cleaners.
- Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit. Otherwise, they could affect or damage surfaces or electrical components.
- Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result.

**Long-term vehicle storage**
Your service center can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.
This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system, and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.
Technical data

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Dimensions

Width with mirrors, height with roof-mounted aerial

1  Vehicle height: 61.6 inches / 1,564 mm
2  Vehicle width with mirrors: 83.9 inches / 2,132 mm
Width without mirrors

1 Vehicle width, without mirrors: 74.8 inches / 1,901 mm
Length, wheel base

1 Wheel base: 120.9 inches / 3,070 mm
2 Length: 196.8 inches / 4,999 mm

Smallest turning circle
Ø: 40 ft/12.2 m
xDrive Ø: 41 ft/12.5 m

Weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>535i</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approved gross vehicle weight</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved front axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved rear axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved roof load capacity</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>550i</strong></td>
<td><strong>535i xDrive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved gross vehicle weight</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved front axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved rear axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved roof load capacity</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft/l</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|      |      |      |      |
| **550i xDrive** | **550i xDrive** |      |      |
| Approved gross vehicle weight | lbs/kg          | 6,096/2,765 | 6,096/2,765 |
| Load             | lbs/kg           | 970/440 | 970/440 |
| Approved front axle load | lbs/kg       | 2,976/1,350 | 2,976/1,350 |
| Approved rear axle load | lbs/kg       | 3,307/1,500 | 3,307/1,500 |
| Approved roof load capacity | lbs/kg | 165/75 | 165/75 |
| Cargo area capacity | cu ft/l       | 15.5-60/440-1,700 | 15.5-60/440-1,700 |
## Capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>US gal/liters</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>18.5/70</td>
<td>Fuel quality, refer to page 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windshield and headlamp</td>
<td>5.3 / 5</td>
<td>washer system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reference: Technical data
### Short commands of the voice act. system

#### Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

#### General information

Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 22.

#### Adjusting

### Vehicle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the main menu.</td>
<td>›Main menu‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the options.</td>
<td>›Options‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the settings.</td>
<td>›Settings‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info display of the instrument cluster.</td>
<td>›Info Display‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings on the Control Display.</td>
<td>›Control display‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the time and date.</td>
<td>›Time and date‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the language and units.</td>
<td>›Language and units‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the speed limit.</td>
<td>›Speed‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the light.</td>
<td>›Lighting‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the door lock.</td>
<td>›Door locks‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the profiles.</td>
<td>›Profiles‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

The following short commands are valid for vehicles with voice activation system. They do not work in equipment packages with which only the mobile phone can be operated by voice activation.
### Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the Driving Mode menu.</td>
<td>›Driving mode‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the ECO PRO menu.</td>
<td>›ECO PRO mode‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Equipment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the air conditioning settings.</td>
<td>›Climate‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the Head-up Display.</td>
<td>›head up display‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable the rear.</td>
<td>›Rear controls‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vehicle information

### Owner's Manual

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the Owner's Manual.</td>
<td>›Display Owner's Manual‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the Quick Reference Guide.</td>
<td>›Quick reference‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the index.</td>
<td>›Owner's Manual‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the search by pictures.</td>
<td>›Search by pictures‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Computer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call up the onboard computer.</td>
<td>›Onboard info‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call up the trip computer.</td>
<td>›Trip computer‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Vehicle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the vehicle information.</td>
<td>›Vehicle info‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the vehicle status.</td>
<td>›Vehicle status‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call up ECO PRO tips.</td>
<td>›ECO PRO Tips‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open EfficientDynamics menu.</td>
<td>›Efficient Dynamics‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EfficientDynamics split screen.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] Efficient Dynamics‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Navigation

### General information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Opens the Navigation menu.</td>
<td>›Navigation‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the destination entry.</td>
<td>›Enter address‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter the address.</td>
<td>›Enter address‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter a town/city.</td>
<td>›City‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter a state/province.</td>
<td>›State‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter the postal code.</td>
<td>›Postal Code‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open destination guidance.</td>
<td>›Guidance‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start destination guidance.</td>
<td>›Start guidance‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminate destination guidance.</td>
<td>›Stop guidance‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the home address.</td>
<td>›Home address‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the route criteria.</td>
<td>›Route preference‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the route.</td>
<td>›Route information‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn on spoken instructions.</td>
<td>›Voice instructions ...‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat the spoken instruction.</td>
<td>›Repeat voice instructions‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn off spoken instructions.</td>
<td>›Voice instructions ...‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the address book.</td>
<td>›Address book‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the most recent destinations.</td>
<td>›Last destinations‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the traffic bulletins.</td>
<td>›Traffic Info‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special destinations.</td>
<td>›Points of interest‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Map

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display the map.</td>
<td>›Map‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map facing north.</td>
<td>›Map facing north‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map facing the direction of travel.</td>
<td>›Map in direction of travel‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perspective map.</td>
<td>›Map perspective‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic scaling of the map.</td>
<td>›Map with automatic scaling‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale ....</td>
<td>›Map scale‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Split screen settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Split screen.</td>
<td>›Split screen ...‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch off the split screen.</td>
<td>›Split screen ...‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjust the split screen.</td>
<td>›Split screen content‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, map facing north.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] map facing north‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, current position.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] current position‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, facing the direction of travel.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] map in direction of travel‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, perspective.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] perspective‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, expanded intersection zoom.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] guiding Plus‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen scale...feet.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] [scale] ... feet, e.g., split screen scale 100 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen scale...meters.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] [scale] ... meters, e.g., split screen scale 100 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen scale...kilometers.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] [scale] ... kilometers, e.g., split screen scale 5 kilometers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen scale...miles.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] [scale] ... miles, e.g., split screen scale 5 miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, highlight the traffic situation.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] Traffic conditions‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, computer.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] on board info‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, trip computer.</td>
<td>»[Split screen] trip computer‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split screen, scale automatically.</td>
<td>»[Split screen] automatic scaling‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Destination guidance with intermediate destinations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enter a new destination.</td>
<td>»Enter address‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip list.</td>
<td>»Stored trips‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Radio**

**FM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open a frequency.</td>
<td>»Frequency ... megahertz, e.g., 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the radio.</td>
<td>»Radio‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the FM stations.</td>
<td>»F M‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the manual search.</td>
<td>»Manual‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a frequency range.</td>
<td>»Select frequency‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open a station.</td>
<td>»Select station‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open a frequency.</td>
<td>»Frequency ... Kilohertz, e.g., frequency 753 or 753 kilohertz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the AM stations.</td>
<td>»A M‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the manual search.</td>
<td>»Manual‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Weather Band

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the Weather Band.</td>
<td>›Weather band‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch on the Weather Band.</td>
<td>›Weather band on‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a Weather Band station.</td>
<td>›Select a weather channel‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Satellite radio

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the satellite radio.</td>
<td>›Satellite radio‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch on the satellite radio.</td>
<td>›Satellite radio ...‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a satellite radio channel.</td>
<td>›Select satellite radio‹, e.g., satellite radio channel 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Stored stations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the stored stations.</td>
<td>›Presets‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose a stored station.</td>
<td>›Select preset‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a stored station.</td>
<td>›Preset ... e.g., stored station 2‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CD/multimedia

#### CD/DVD drive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select a track.</td>
<td>›Track ... e.g., track 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>›CD track ... e.g., CD track 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play back a CD.</td>
<td>›CD ...‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a CD.</td>
<td>›Select CD‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a CD and track.</td>
<td>›CD ... track ... e.g., CD 3 track 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the CD and Multimedia menus.</td>
<td>›Multimedia‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Function 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD and DVD.</td>
<td>›C D‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a DVD.</td>
<td>›D V D ...‹ e.g. DVD 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the entertainment details on a split screen.</td>
<td>›[Split screen] entertainment details‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Music collection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search for music, open a menu.</td>
<td>›Music search‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the current playback.</td>
<td>›Current playback‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the music collection.</td>
<td>›Music collection‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play back the music collection.</td>
<td>›Music collection on‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play back the most frequently played tracks.</td>
<td>›Top fifty‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### External devices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the external devices.</td>
<td>›External devices‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the Bluetooth devices.</td>
<td>›Bluetooth‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX at front.</td>
<td>›AUX front‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the tone settings.</td>
<td>›Tone‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Telephone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dial a phone number.</td>
<td>›Dial number‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opens the Telephone menu.</td>
<td>›Telephone‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display the phone book.</td>
<td>›Phonebook‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redialing.</td>
<td>›Redial‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display received calls.</td>
<td>›Received calls‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of messages.</td>
<td>›Messages‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the Bluetooth devices.</td>
<td>›Bluetooth‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Office

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the Office menu.</td>
<td>›Office‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Office Today.</td>
<td>›Current office‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the contacts.</td>
<td>›Contacts‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the messages.</td>
<td>›Messages‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the calendar.</td>
<td>›Calendar‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the tasks.</td>
<td>›Tasks‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display the reminders.</td>
<td>›Reminders‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### BMW Assist or ConnectedDrive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open BMW Assist.</td>
<td>›B M W Assist‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open ConnectedDrive.</td>
<td>›Connected Drive‹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open BMW Search.</td>
<td>›B M W Online‹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 121
ACC, Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go 129
Activated-charcoal filter 154
Active Blind Spot Detection 117
Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, ACC 129
Active Protection 119
Active seat, front 52
Active seat ventilation, front 52
Active seat ventilation, rear 55
Active Steering, integral 124
Adaptive brake assistant 121
Adaptive brake lights, refer to Brake force display 119
Adaptive drive 124
Adaptive light control 98
Additives, oil 200
Adjusting front seats 49
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 49
After washing vehicle 218
Airbags 101
Airbags, indicator/warning light 102
Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 153
Air, dehumidifying, refer to Cooling function 153
Air distribution, manual 152
Air flow, automatic climate control 152
Air pressure, tires 187
Air vents, refer to Ventilation 154
Alarm system 43
Alarm, unintentional 44
All around the center console 14
All around the headliner 15
All around the steering wheel 12
ALL program, automatic climate control 153
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 194
All-wheel-drive 123
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 159
Alternative oil types 201
Ambient light 100
Antifreeze, washer fluid 77
Antilock Brake System, ABS 121
Anti-slip control, refer to DSC 121
Approved axle load 226
Approved engine oils 201
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 167
Arrival time 92
Ashtray 160
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 213
Assistance when driving off 121
AUTO H button, refer to Automatic Hold 73
AUTO intensity 152
Automatic car wash 217
Automatic climate control 151
Automatic Cruise Control with Stop & Go 129
Automatic Curb Monitor 60
Automatic deactivation, front passenger airbags 103
Automatic headlamp control 97
Automatic Hold 73
Automatic locking 37
Automatic recirculated-air control 153
Automatic Soft Closing, doors 38
Automatic Soft Closing, tailgate 39
Automatic tailgate 39
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 77
AUTO program, automatic climate control 152
AUTO program, intensity 152
Auto Start/Stop function 69
Average fuel consumption 92
Average speed 92
Axle loads, weights 226

B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support 51
Backrest, width 51
Back seats, adjusting 53
Backup camera 141
Band-aids, refer to First aid kit 213
Bar for tow-starting/towing 216
Basic position, rear seats 55
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 210
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control 31
Battery, vehicle 210
Belts, safety belts 56
Beverage holder, cupholder 168
Blinds, sun protection 46
BMW Assist, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
BMW Homepage 6
BMW Internet page 6
BMW Maintenance System 203
Bonus range, ECO PRO 180
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder 168
Brake assistant 121
Brake assistant, adaptive 121
Brake discs, breaking in 172
Brake force display 119
Brake lamps, brake force display 119
Brake lamps, bulb replacement 209
Brake lights, adaptive 119
Brake pads, breaking in 172
Braking, notes 173
Breakdown assistance 212, 213
Breaking in 172
Brightness of Control Display 95
Bulb replacement 206
Bulb replacement, front 207
Bulb replacement, rear 209
Bulbs and lamps 206
Button assignment for remote control 30
Button, RES 131
Button, Start/Stop 67
Bypassing, refer to Jump-starting 214

C
California Proposition 65
Warning 7
Camera, backup camera 142
Camera, care 220
Camera, Side View 144
Camera, Top View 140
Can holder, refer to Cupholder 168
Car battery 210
Car care products 218
Care, displays 220
Care, vehicle 218
Cargo 175
Cargo area 162
Cargo area, enlarging 163
Cargo area lid 38
Cargo area, storage compartments 169
Cargo cover 162
Cargo partition 164
Cargo straps, securing cargo 176
Car key, refer to Remote control 30
Carpet, care 219
Car wash 217
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 172
CBS Condition Based Service 203
CD/Multimedia, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Center armrest 167
Center console 14
Central locking system 34
Central screen, refer to Control Display 16
Changes, technical, refer to Safety 7
Changing parts 206
Changing wheels 210
Changing wheels/tires 193
Check Control 84
Children, seating position 63
Children, transporting safely 63
Child restraint fixing system 63
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 64
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 63
Child safety locks 66
Child seat, mounting 63
Child seats 63
Chrome parts, care 219
Cigarette lighter 160
Cleaning, displays 220
Climate control 151
Climate control windshield 173
Clock 87
Closing/opening from inside 37
Closing/opening via door lock 36
Closing/opening with remote control 34
Clothes hooks 168
Collision hooks 109, 111
Combination switch, refer to Turn signals 74
Combination switch, refer to Wiper system 75
COMFORT+ program, Driving Experience Switch 127
Comfort Access 41
COMFORT program, Driving Experience Switch 127
Computer 91
Condensation on windows 152
Condensation under the vehicle 174
Condition Based Service CBS 203
Configure driving mode 128
Confirmation signal 35
ConnectedDrive, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Control Display 16
Control Display, settings 93
Controller 16
Control systems, driving sta-
 bility 121
Convenient opening 35
Coolant 202
Coolant temperature 87
Cooling function 153
Cooling, maximum 152
Cooling system 202
Corrosion on brake discs 174
Cruise control 135
Cruise control, active with
 Stop & Go 129
Cruising range 88
Cupholder 168
Curb weight 226
Current fuel consumption 88

D
Damage, tires 192
Damping control, dy-
 namic 124
Data, technical 224
Date 87
Daytime running lights 97
Defrosting, refer to Windows,
 defrosting 152
Dehumidifying, air 153
Destination distance 92
Digital clock 87
Dimensions 224
Dimmable exterior mirrors 61
Dimmable interior rearview
 mirror 61
Direction indicator, refer to
 Turn signals 74
Display in windshield 149
Display lighting, refer to Instru-
 ment lighting 99
Displays 80, 81
Displays, cleaning 220
Disposal, vehicle battery 211
Distance control, refer to
 PDC 137
Distance, selecting for
 ACC 131
Distance to destination 92
Divided screen view, split
 screen 20
Door lock, refer to Remote
 control 30
Doors, Automatic Soft Clos-
ing 38
Downhill control 123
Drive-off assistant 121
Drive-off assistant, refer to
 DSC 121
Driving Experience
 Switch 126
Driving instructions, breaking in 172
Driving mode 126
Driving notes, general 172
Driving stability control sys-
tems 121
Driving tips 172
DSC Dynamic Stability Con-
trol 121
DTC driving dynamics 122
DTC Dynamic Traction Con-
trol 122
Dynamic Damping Con-
trol 124
Dynamic Drive 124
Dynamic Stability Control
 DSC 121
Dynamic Traction Control
 DTC 122
EfficientDynamics 181
Electronic displays, instru-
m ent cluster 81
Electronic Stability Program
 ESP, refer to DSC 121
Emergency detection, remote control 31
Emergency release, door lock 37
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 184
Emergency release, parking brake 71
Emergency Request 212
Emergency service, refer to
 Roadside Assistance 213
Emergency start function, en-
gine start 31
Emergency unlocking, tail-
gate 41
Energy Control 88
Energy recovery 88
Engine, automatic Start/Stop
 function 69
Engine, automatic switch-
 off 69
Engine compartment 197
Engine compartment, working in 197
Engine coolant 202
Engine oil 199
Engine oil, adding 200
Engine oil additives 200
Engine oil change 201
Engine oil filler neck 200
Engine oil temperature 87
Engine oil types, alterna-
tive 201
Engine oil types, ap-
proved 201
Engine start during malfunc-
tion 31
Engine start, jump-start-
ing 214
Engine start, refer to Starting the engine 68
Engine stop 68
Engine temperature 87
Entering a car wash 217
Equipment, interior 158
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC 121
Exchanging wheels/tires 193
Exhaust system 172
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 61
Exterior mirrors 60
External start 214
External temperature display 87
External temperature warning 87
Eyes for securing cargo 176

F

Failure message, refer to Check Control 84
False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm 44
Fan, refer to Air flow 152
Fault displays, refer to Check Control 84
Filler neck for engine oil 200
Fine wood, care 219
First aid kit 213
Fitting for towing, refer to Tow fitting 216
Flat tire, changing wheels 210
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 107
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 104
Flat tire, warning lamp 105, 108
Flooding 173
Floor carpet, care 219
Floor mats, care 219
Fold-out position, windshield wipers 76
Foot brake 173
Front airbags 101
Front fog lamps 99
Front fog lamps, front, bulb replacement 208
Front lamps 207
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 103
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp 103
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 107
Fuel cap 184
Fuel consumption, current 88
Fuel consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 92
Fuel filler flap 184
Fuel gauge 87
Fuel quality 186
Fuel, tank capacity 228
Fuse 211

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 158
Gasoline 186
Gasoline quality 186
Gear change, automatic transmission 78
General driving notes 172
Glass sunroof, refer to Panoramic glass sunroof 47
Glove compartment 166
Gross vehicle weight, approved 226

H

Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 71
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 159
Hazard warning flashers 212
HDC Hill Descent Control 123
Head airbags 101
Headlamp control, automatic 97
Headlamp courtesy delay feature 97
Headlamp courtesy delay feature via remote control 35
Headlamp flasher 75
Headlamp glass 207
Headlamps 207
Headlamps, care 218
Headlamp washer system 75
Headliner 15
Head restraints 49
Head restraints, front 57
Head restraints, rear 58
Head-Up Display 149
Head-up Display, care 220
Heavy cargo, stowing 176
Height with roof-mounted aerial, vehicle 224
High-beam Assistant 98
High beams 75
High beams/low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant 98
Hill Descent Control HDC 123
Hills 174
Hill start assistant, refer to Drive-off assistant 121
Hints 6
Holder for beverages 168
Homepage 6
Hood 197
Horn 12
Hotel function, tailgate 41
Hot exhaust system 172
HUD Head-Up Display 149
Hydroplaning 173

I

Ice warning, refer to External temperature warning 87
Icy roads, refer to External temperature warning 87
Identification marks, tires 191
Identification number, refer to Important features in the engine compartment 197
iDrive 16
Ignition key, refer to Remote control 30
Ignition off 67
Ignition on 67
Indication of a flat tire 105, 108
Individual air distribution 152
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 31
Inflation pressure, tires 187
Inflation pressure warning FTM, tires 107
Info display, refer to Computer 91
Initialization, Integral Active Steering 125
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 105
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 108
Instrument cluster 80
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 81
Instrument display, multifunctional 81
Instrument lighting 99
Integral Active Steering 124
Integrated key 30
Integrated universal remote control 158
Intensity, AUTO program 152
Interior equipment 158
Interior lamps 100
Interior lamps via remote control 35
Interior motion sensor 44
Interior rearview mirror 61
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 61
Internet page 6
Interval display, service requirements 88
J
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 210
Jack, refer to Vehicle jack 210
Joystick, automatic transmission 78
Jump-starting 214
K
Key/remote control 30
Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access 41
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 31
Kickdown, automatic transmission 78
Knee airbag 102
L
Lamp replacement 206
Lamp replacement, front 207
Lamp replacement, rear 209
Lamps 96
Lamps and bulbs 206
Lane departure warning 116
Lane margin, warning 116
Language on Control Display 94
Lashing eyes, securing cargo 176
LATCH child restraint fixing system 64
Leather, care 218
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 207
Length, vehicle 226
Letters and numbers, entering 21
License plate lamp, bulb replacement 209
Light-alloy wheels, care 219
Light control 98
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 207
Lighting 96
Lighting, speaker 100
Lighting via remote control 35
Light switch 96
Load 175
Loading 175
Loading position 165
Lock, door 36
Locking/unlocking from inside 37
Locking/unlocking via door lock 36
Locking/unlocking with remote control 34
Locking, automatic 37
Locking, central 34
Locking via tailgate 39
Lock, power window 45
Locks, doors, and windows 66
Low beams 96
Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam Assistant 98
Lower back support 51
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 176
Lumbar support 51
M
Maintenance 203
Maintenance requirements 203
Maintenance, service requirements 88
Maintenance system, BMW 203
Malfunction displays, refer to Check Control 84
Malfunction, self-leveling suspension 125
Manual air distribution 152
Manual air flow 152
Manual brake, refer to Parking brake 71
Manual mode, transmission 78
Manual operation, backup camera 142
Manual operation, door lock 37
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 60
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 184
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 138
Manual operation, parking brake 71
Manual operation, Side View 144
Manual operation, Top View 140
Marking on approved tires 193
Marking, run-flat tires 194
Massage seat, front 52
Master key, refer to Remote control 30
Maximum cooling 152
Maximum speed, display 89
Maximum speed, winter tires 194
Measure, units of 95
Memory for seat, mirrors, steering wheel 59
Menu, EfficientDynamics 181
Menu in instrument cluster 91
Menus, operating, iDrive 16
Menus, refer to iDrive operating concept 17
Messages, refer to Check Control 84
Microfilter 154
Minimum tread, tires 192
Mirror 60
Mirror memory 59
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 173
Modifications, technical, refer to Safety 7
Moisture in headlamp 207
Monitor, refer to Control Display 16
Mounting of child restraint fixing systems 63
Multifunctional instrument display 81
Multi-function hook 169
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 12

N
Navigation, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Neck restraints, front, refer to Head restraints 57
Neck restraints, rear, refer to Head restraints 58
New wheels and tires 193
Night Vision with pedestrian detection 113
No Passing Information 89
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 216

O
OBD Onboard Diagnostics 204
Obstacle marking, backup camera 143
Octane rating, refer to Gasoline quality 186
Odometer 87
Office, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Oil 199
Oil, adding 200
Oil additives 200
Oil change 201
Oil change interval, service requirements 88
Oil filler neck 200
Oil types, alternative 201
Oil types, approved 201
Old batteries, disposal 211
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 204
Onboard monitor, refer to Control Display 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 206
Opening/closing from inside 37
Opening/closing via door lock 36
Opening/closing with remote control 34
Opening the tailgate with no-touch activation 42
Opening the trunk lid with no-touch activation 42
Operating concept, iDrive 16
Optional equipment, standard equipment 6
Outside air, refer to Automatic recirculated-air control 153
Overheating of engine, refer to Coolant temperature 87
Overtaking prohibitions 89

P
Paint, vehicle 218
Panic mode 35
Panoramic glass sunroof 47
Parallel parking assistant 145
Park Distance Control PDC 137
Parked-car ventilation 156
Parked vehicle, condensation 174
Parking aid, refer to PDC 137
Parking assistant 145
Parking brake 71
Parking lamps 96
Parking with Auto Hold 73
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward 60
Pathway lines, backup camera 143
PDC Park Distance Control 137
Pedestrian detection, refer to Night Vision 113
People detection, refer to Night Vision 113
Personal Profile 31
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 47
Pinch protection system, windows 45
Plastic, care 219
Power failure 211
Power windows 44
Pressure, tire air pressure 187
Pressure warning FTM, tires 107
Profile, refer to Personal Profile 31
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 20
Protective function, glass sunroof 47
Protective function, windows 45
Push-and-turn switch, refer to Controller 16

R

Radiator fluid 202
Radio-operated key, refer to Remote control 30
Radio ready state 67
Radio, see user’s manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Rain sensor 76
Rear automatic climate control 155
Rear axle steering 124
Rear lamps 209
Rear seats, adjusting 53
Rear seats, basic position 55
Rear sockets 161
Rearview mirror 60
Rear window defroster 153
Recirculated-air mode 153
Recommended tire brands 193
Refueling 184
Remaining range 88
Remote control/key 30
Remote control, button assignment 30
Remote control, malfunction 36
Remote control, universal 158
Replacement fuse 211
Replacing parts 206
Replacing wheels/tires 193
Reporting safety defects 8
RES button 131
Reserve warning, refer to Range 88
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 105
Residual heat, automatic climate control 153
Retaining straps, securing cargo 176
Retreaded tires 194
Reversing lamp, bulb replacement 209
Roadside parking lamps 97
Roller sunblinds 46
Roll stabilization, refer to Adaptive Drive 124
Roll stabilization, refer to Dynamic Drive 124
RON gasoline quality 186
Roof load capacity 226
Roof-mounted luggage rack 176
Rope for tow-starting/towing 216
RSC Run Flat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 194
Rubber components, care 219
Run-flat tires 194

S

Safe braking 173
Safety 7
Safety belt reminder for driver’s seat and front passenger seat 56
Safety belts 56
Safety belts, care 219
Safety Package, refer to Active Protection 119
Safety switch, windows 45
Safety systems, airbags 101
Saving fuel 0
Screen, refer to Control Display 16
Screwdriver 206
Screw thread for tow fitting 216
Seat belts, refer to Safety belts 56
Seat heating, front 52
Seat heating, rear 55
Seating position for children 63
Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory 59
Seats 49
Seats, rear, adjusting 53
Seat ventilation, front 52
Seat ventilation, rear 55
Selection list in instrument cluster 91
Selector lever, automatic transmission 78
Self-leveling suspension, air suspension 125
Self-leveling suspension, malfunction 125
Sensors, care 220
Service and warranty 7
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 203
Service requirements, display 88
Service, Roadside Assistance 213
Settings on Control Display 93
Settings, storing for seat, mirrors, steering wheel 59
Shifting, automatic transmission 77
Shift paddles on steering wheel 79
Short commands 229
Shoulder support 51
Side airbags 101
Side View 144
Signaling, horn 12
Signals when unlocking 35
Sitting safely 49
Size 224
Ski and snowboard bag 165
Slide/tilt glass roof 47
Smallest turning circle 226
Smoker’s package 160
Snow chains 195
Socket 161
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 204
SOS button 212
Spare fuse 211
Speaker lighting 100
Specified engine oil types 201
Speed, average 92
Speed limit detection, onboard computer 92
Speed limiter, display 89
Speed Limit Information 89
Speed limit in the computer 92
Split screen 20
SPORT+ program, Dynamic Driving Control 127
Sport automatic transmission 79
SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 127
Sport program, transmission 78
Stability control systems 121
Start/stop, automatic function 69
Start/Stop button 67
Start function during malfunction 31
Starting the engine 68
Status display, tires 104
Status information, iDrive 19
Status of Owner’s Manual 6
Steering, Integral Active
Steering 124
Steering wheel, adjusting 62
Steering wheel heating 62
Steering wheel memory 59
Steptronic, automatic transmission 77
Stopping the engine 68
Storage compartment in the center console 168
Storage compartments 166
Storage compartments, locations 166
Storage, tires 194
Storing the vehicle 220
Summer tires, tread 192
Supplementary text message 86
Surround View 139
Suspension settings 126
Switch for Dynamic Driving Control 126
Switch-on times, parked-car ventilation 157
Switch, refer to Cockpit 12
Symbols 6
Tachometer 87
Tail and brake lamps 209
Tailgate 38
Tailgate, automatic 39
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 41
Tailgate, hotel function 41
Tailgate opening with no-touch activation 42
Tailgate via remote control 35
Tail lamps 209
Tail lamps, bulb replacement 209
Technical changes, refer to Safety 7
Technical data 224
Telephone, see user’s manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Temperature, automatic climate control 152
Temperature display, external temperature 87
Temperature, engine oil 87
Tempomat, refer to Active Cruise Control 129
Terminal, jump-starting 214
Text message, supplementary 86
Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 43
Theft protection, refer to Central locking system 34
Thermal camera, refer to Night Vision 113
Through-loading system 163
Tilt alarm sensor 44
Time of arrival 92
Tire damage 192
Tire identification marks 191
Tire inflation pressure 187
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 107
Tire Pressure Monitor
TPM 104
Tires, changing 193
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 187
Tires, run-flat tires 194
Tire tread 192
Tone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Tools 206
Top View 139
Total vehicle weight 226
Tow fitting 216
Towing 215
Tow-starting 215
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 104
Traction control 122
TRACTION program, Dynamic Driving Control 126
Transmission, automatic 77
Transporting children safely 63
Tread, tires 192
Trip computer 93
Triple turn signal activation 74
Trip odometer 87
Trunk lid 38
Trunk lid, automatic 39
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 41
Trunk lid, hotel function 41
Trunk lid via remote control 35
Turning circle 226
Turning circle lines, backup camera 143
Turn signals, operation 74
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 209

U
Unintentional alarm 44

Units of measure 95
Universal remote control 158
Unlock button, automatic transmission 78
Unlocking/locking from inside 37
Unlocking/locking via door lock 36
Unlocking/locking with remote control 34
Updates made after the editorial deadline 6
Upholstery care 218
USB interface 162

V
Variable button assignment for remote control 30
Variable steering, Integral Active Steering 124
Vehicle battery 210
Vehicle battery, replacing 210
Vehicle, breaking in 172
Vehicle care 218
Vehicle equipment 6
Vehicle identification number, refer to Identification number in the engine compartment 197
Vehicle jack 210
Vehicle paint 218
Vehicle storage 220
Vehicle wash 217
Ventilation 154
Ventilation, refer to Parked-car ventilation 156
Voice activation, short commands 229
Voice activation system 22

W
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 84
Warning triangle 213
Washer fluid 77
Washer fluid reservoir, capacity 228
Washer nozzles, windshield 76
Washer system 75
Washing, vehicle 217
Water on roads 173
Weights 226
Welcome lamps 96
Wheel base, vehicle 226
Wheels, changing 193
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 187
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 107
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 104
Width with mirrors, vehicle 224
Width without mirrors, vehicle 225
Window defroster, rear 153
Windows, powered 44
Windshield, climate control 173
Windshield washer fluid 77
Windshield washer nozzles 76
Windshield washer system 75
Windshield wiper 75
Windshield wipers, fold-out position 76
Winter storage, care 220
Winter tires, suitable tires 194
Winter tires, tread 192
Wiper blades, replacing 206
Wiper fluid 77
Wiper system 75
Wood, care 219
Word match concept, navigation 21
Wrench 206
xDrive 123
Xenon headlamps, bulb replacement 207